LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

Office of Business Enterprises Duplication Services Section

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that the collections of the Library of Congress contain a bound volume entitled **JPEG STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD**, call number TA 1632.P45 1992, Copy 2. The attached – Cover Page, Title Page, Copyright Page, Table of Contents Pages, Chapter 2, Chapter 5 and Appendix A - are a true and complete representation from that work.

THIS IS TO CERTIFY FURTHER, that work is marked with a Library of Congress Copyright Office stamp dated November 23, 1992.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the seal of the Library of Congress is affixed hereto on May 18, 2018.

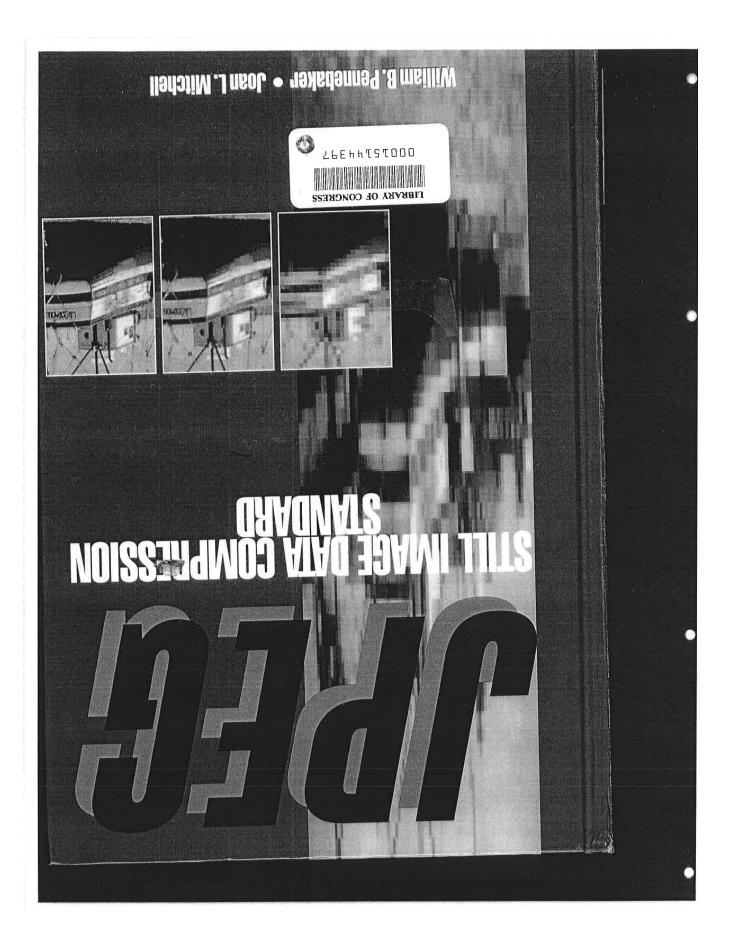
Tendre Scol

Deirdre Scott Business Enterprises Officer Office of Business Enterprises Library of Congress



101 Independence Avenue, SE Washington, DC 20540-4917 Tel 202.707.5650 www.loc.gov; duplicationservices@loc.gov

HULU LLC Exhibit 1008 IPR2018-01187 Page 1



William B. Pennebaker Joan L. Mitchell



VAN NOSTRAND REINHOLD New York

BY OF CONGA YRIGHT

0

Copyright © 1993 by Van Nostrand Reinhold

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 92-32860 ISBN 0-442-01272-1

All rights reserved. No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems—without written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

Van Nostrand Reinhold 115 Fifth Avenue New York, New York 10003

Chapman and Hall 2-6 Boundary Row London, SE1 8HN, England

Thomas Nelson Australia 102 Dodds Street South Melbourne 3205 Victoria, Australia

Nelson Canada 1120 Birchmount Road Scarborough, Ontario M1K 5G4, Canada

16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Pennebaker, William B. JPEG still image data compression standard / William B.
Pennebaker, Joan L. Mitchell.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-442-01272-1
1. Image processing—Digital techniques—Standards. 2. Data compression (Telecommunication)—Standards. 3. Algorithms.
I. Mitchell, Joan L. II. Title.
TA1632.P45 1992

621.36'7—dc20

92-32860 CIP

CONTENTS

FOREWORD xiii

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS xv

TRADEMARKS xvii

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION 1

- 1.1 Examples of JPEG image compression O 4
- 1.2 Organization of the book 4
 1.3 An architecture for image compression 6
- 1.4 JPEG baseline and extended systems 6
 1.5 An evolving standard 7
- 1.6 An international collaboration O 7

CHAPTER 2. IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY 9

2.1 Digital images O 10

- 2.2 Sampling O 10
 2.3 Two-dimensional arrays of samples O 12
- 2.4 Digital image data types O 13

vii

υ

65

2.5 Large amounts of data O 21

CHAPTER 3. ASPECTS OF THE HUMAN VISUAL SYSTEM 23

3.1 Luminance sampling O 23

3.2 Sample precision O 25

3.3 Chrominance sampling O 25

3.4 Linearity O 25

viii

CHAPTER 4. THE DISCRETE COSINE TRANSFORM (DCT) 29 4.1 Basic DCT concepts O 29

4.2 Mathematical definition of the FDCT and IDCT 0 39

4.3 Fast DCTs 0 41

CHAPTER 5. IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS 65

5.1 Basic structure of image compression systems O

5.2 Image compression models O 67

5.3 JPEG entropy encoder and entropy decoder structures O 73

5.4 Transcoding O 77

5.5 JPEG lossless and lossy compression O 78

5.6 Sequential and progressive coding O 79

5.7 Hierarchical coding O 79

5.8 Compression measures O 79

CHAPTER 6. JPEG MODES OF OPERATION 81

6.1 Sequential DCT-based mode of operation O 81

6.2 Progressive DCT-based mode of operation O 86

6.3 Sequential lossless mode of operation O 92

6.4 Hierarchical mode of operation O 93

CHAPTER 7. JPEG SYNTAX AND DATA ORGANIZATION 97

7.1 Control procedures and compressed data structure O 97

7.2 Interchange and abbreviated compressed data formats O 99

7.3 Image data ordering O 99

7.4 Marker definitions ① 105

7.5 Frame header 0 110

7.6 Scan header **①** 113

7.7 Limit on the number of data units in an MCU 0 116

7.8 Marker segments for tables and parameters 0 117

7.9 Hierarchical progression marker segments 0 120

7.10 Examples of JPEG data streams 0 122

7.11 Backus-Naur Form • 127

7.12 JPEG BNF • 130

CHAPTER 8. ENTROPY CODING CONCEPTS 135

8.1 Entropy and information O 135

8.2 An example to illustrate entropy coding O 137

8.3 Variable-length code words O 137

8.4 Statistical modeling O 143

8.5 Adaptive coding O 147

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 9. JPEG BINARY ARITHMETIC CODING 149

9.1 The QM-encoder 0 151

9.2 The QM-decoder 0 162

9.3 More about the QM-coder 0 166

CHAPTER 10. JPEG CODING MODELS 169

10.1 JPEG sequential DCT-based coding models 0 170

10.2 Models for progressive DCT-based coding 0 173

10.3 Coding model for lossless coding • 182

10.4 Models for hierarchical coding 0 185

CHAPTER 11. JPEG HUFFMAN ENTROPY CODING 189

11.1 Statistical models for the Huffman DCT-based sequential mode **•** 190

11.2 Statistical models for progressive DCT-based coding • 194
 11.3 Statistical models for lossless coding and hierarchical mode spatial

corrections • 198

11.4 Generation of Huffman tables 0 198

CHAPTER 12. ARITHMETIC CODING STATISTICAL MODELS 203

12.1 Overview of JPEG binary arithmetic-coding procedures 0 203

12.2 Decision trees and notation **O** 204

12.3 Statistical models for the DCT-based sequential mode with arithmetic coding Φ 206

12.4 Statistical models for progressive DCT-based coding 0 214

12.5 Statistical models for lossless coding and hierarchical-mode spatial corrections • 216

12.6 Arithmetic coding conditioning tables **O** 218

CHAPTER 13. MORE ON ARITHMETIC CODING 219

13.1 Optimal procedures for hardware and software • 220

13.2 Fast software encoder implementations • 225

13.3 Fast software decoder implementations • 228

13.4 Conditional exchange
229

13.5 QM-coder versus Q-coder • 229

13.6 Resynchronization of decoders • 230

13.7 Speedup mode
 231

CHAPTER 14. PROBABILITY ESTIMATION 233

- 14.1 Bayesian estimation () 234
- 14.2 Renormalization-driven estimation 0 235

14.3 Markov-chain modelling of the probability estimation • 236

- 14.4 Approximate model 238
- 14.5 Single- and mixed-context models 240
- 14.6 Single-context model 241
- 14.7 Mixed-context model 243
- 14.8 Application of the estimation models to the QM-coder O 244
- 14.9 Initial learning 0 247

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD 249 14.10 Robustness of estimators versus refinement of models () 14.11 Other estimation tables ① 249 CHAPTER 15. COMPRESSION PERFORMANCE 253 15.1 Results for baseline sequential DCT O 254 255 15.2 Results for sequential DCT with arithmetic coding O 15.3 Results for sequential DCT with restart capability O 255 256 15.4 Results for progressive DCT with arithmetic coding O 15.5 Results for lossless mode with arithmetic coding O 257 15.6 Summary of Results O 258 CHAPTER 16. JPEG ENHANCEMENTS 261 16.1 Removing blocking artifacts with AC prediction O 261 16.2 Low bitrate VQ enhanced decoding O 264 16.3 An approximate form of adaptive quantization () 264 16.4 Display-adjusted decoding O 266 CHAPTER 17. JPEG APPLICATIONS AND VENDORS 267 17.1 Adobe Systems Incorporated O 269 17.2 AT&T Microelectronics O 270 17.3 AutoGraph International ApS O 271 17.4 AutoView O 272 17.5 Bulletin board systems O 272 17.6 California Department of Motor Vehicles O 273 17.7 C-Cube Microsystems, Inc. O 273 17.8 Data Link O 275 17.9 Discovery Technologies, Inc. O 275 17.10 DSP O 276 17.11 Eastman Kodak Company O 276 17.12 Handmade Software O 277 17.13 IBM O 278 17.14 Identix O 279 17.15 IIT O 279 17.16 Independent JPEG Group O 280 17.17 ITRO 281 17.18 Lewis Siwell, Inc. O 281 17.19 LSI Logic O 282 17.20 Moore Data Management Services O 283 17.21 NBS Imaging O 283 17.22 NTT Electronics Technology Ltd. ○ 17.23 OPTIBASE[®] ○ 284 284 17.24 Optivision, Inc. O 284 17.25 Philips Kommunikations Industrie O 285 17.26 PRISM O 286 17.27 Storm Technology O 286 17.28 Telephoto Communications O 287 17.29 Tribune Publishing Co. O 288 17.30 VideoTelecom O 288

17.31 XImage O 289

U

CONTENTS

 17.32
 Xing ○
 289

 17.33
 Zoran Corporation ○
 290

 17.34
 3M ○
 291

 17.35
 File formats ○
 292

 CHAPTER 18. OVERVIEW OF CCITT, ISO, AND IEC
 295

 18.1 ISO 0
 296

 18.2 CCITT 0
 297

 18.3 IEC 0
 298

 18.4 Joint coordination 0
 299

xi

CHAPTER 19. HISTORY OF JPEG 301 19.1 Formation of JPEG O 301 19.2 Original JPEG Goals O 302 19.3 Selecting an approach O 302 19.4 Functional requirements O 303 19.5 Refining the ADCT technique O 306 19.6 Technical specifications 0 307 19.7 ISO 10918 Part 1 O 309 19.8 JPEG Part 1 DIS ballot results O 311 19.9 CCITT Recommendation T.81 O 311 19.10 ISO 10918 Part 2 O 311 19.11 JPEG Goals Achieved O 313

CHAPTER 20. OTHER IMAGE COMPRESSION STANDARDS31720.1 CCITT G3 and G4 \odot 31720.2 H.261 \odot 31820.3 JBIG \odot 31820.4 MPEG \odot 325

CHAPTER 21. POSSIBLE FUTURE JPEG DIRECTIONS33121.1 Adaptive quantization O33121.2 Improvements to lossless coding •33221.3 Other possible addenda O33321.4 Backwards compatibility O333

APPENDIX A. ISO DIS 10918-1 REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES 335

APPENDIX B. DRAFT ISO DIS 10918-2 COMPLIANCE TESTING 545

REFERENCES 627

INDEX 632

IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

In this chapter we develop some of the basic concepts and vocabulary needed for an understanding of the image compression functions contained in JPEG. Our approach in this chapter will be qualitative rather than mathematical.

The reader undoubtedly has an intuitive grasp of what the term "image" means. We are surrounded by images: photographs, television, printed material, etc., all aimed at the incredibly powerful visual input channel into the human brain. We are used to thinking of images as twodimensional, but in fact, they often have several more dimensions. Color, time (motion), and depth (three-dimensional and stereo pairs) can add additional dimensions to the information in an image, and, if we want to consider the image as a fractal, the question of dimensionality becomes yet more complex. By definition, however, JPEG is concerned primarily with images that have two spatial dimensions, contain grayscale or color information, and possess no temporal dependence (hence the word "still" in the title of the JPEG standard).

9

U

2.1 Digital images O

10

The images compressed with the JPEG techniques are digital images. Many readers are already familiar with the way in which television images are scanned. Starting at the top of the screen, a television field is displayed on a CRT (cathode-ray tube) by the scanning of an electron beam one horizontal line at a time in rapid sequence. An image created in this way is already segmented into a set of discrete scan lines. To turn this into a true digital image we do two more things: take samples along each scan line at regular intervals and convert these samples into binary numbers which can be stored in a computer.

2.2 Sampling O

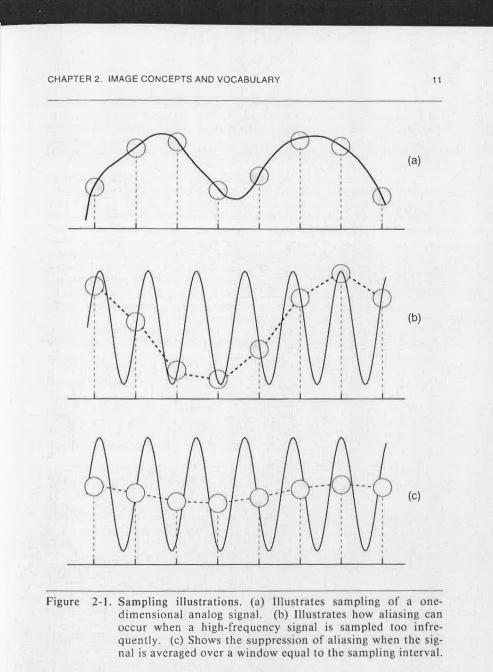
The sampling process used to create a digital image necessarily discards an enormous amount of information: the fine spatial detail and tiny amplitude variations that are, by definition, not important enough to preserve. The term *lossless compression*, which we shall discuss later in this chapter implies preservation of all information, but in fact such compression preserves only the information in the sampled data, totally ignoring the loss of information that is a necessary part of capturing any digital image.

There are three important parameters in sampling a signal: precision, sampling interval, and sampling aperture.

Suppose we have the one-dimensional analog signal, perhaps the output of a television camera, shown in Figure 2-1*a*. When we take measurements of this signal at discrete points, marked by dots, we are sampling the signal. When we convert to a digital representation of the signal we are expressing the sample with some fixed number of bits per sample, which is the precision of the sample. In the process we are assuming that this fixed number of bits is sufficient to represent the signal, much as we restrict the number of decimal places when we write down a number. The only difference is that we use binary digits or "bits," the traditional way of expressing numbers in computers.

The interval between samples determines the resolution of the sampled signal. For the signal in Figure 2-1a resolution can be defined as the number of samples taken per unit time. For a given precision in our samples, the higher the resolution (that is, the more samples we take in a given time interval), the more accurately we can represent the variations in the signal. The resolution thus provides an upper limit on the frequencies that can be represented in the sampled signal. Just how we sample a signal is very important, however, because we can get very misleading measurements if we do it improperly.

Figure 2-1b illustrates a signal that varies rapidly between samples. If we connect the dots as shown in Figure 2-1b, the sampled output appears to have a much lower frequency than the original analog signal. This distortion is termed *aliasing*, and is closely related to an effect seen in western-movie scenes, in which wagon wheels appear to turn backwards. Figure 2-1b illustrates an important point. You must have enough samples



to represent properly a signal that is changing.1 When you do not have enough samples, you may get aliasing effects. Aliasing can be largely suppressed if the input signal is averaged over

an interval (the aperture) that is roughly equal to the interval between

samples. Figure 2-1c illustrates this. Optical scanning input devices often do this averaging automatically in the process of scanning an image, usually because the effective aperture (opening) through which the light is acquired by each sensor is nearly as wide as the spatial interval between light sensors. However, even the best image input devices will exhibit minor aliasing artifacts.

One of the common space- and cost-saving techniques, especially in working with images, is to reduce the spatial resolution of the data (i.e., the number of samples taken in a given space). This can be done in a number of ways, including a simple method known as "subsampling." In subsampling by a factor of two, for example, every other sample is discarded, thereby halving the number of samples representing the data. Note that this effectively makes the sampling interval twice as large, while leaving the aperture unchanged. The net result is equivalent to sampling with too small an aperture. Sampling with too small an aperture or too large a sampling interval, as was done in Figure 2-1b, will provide an insufficient number of samples for a truly accurate representation of the original image, and can result in severe aliasing effects.

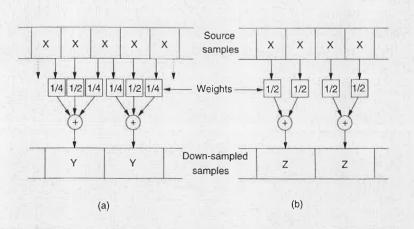
The solution to this problem is to use an average of two or more samples rather than a single sample in the process of reducing the resolution. We call this process filtering, and the weight we give to each sample as we average them is called the filter coefficient. The only restriction is that these weights should sum to one. Figure 2-2 gives two simple weighted averages (filters) that might be used when subsampling by a factor of two in one dimension. Note that the center of each subsampled point labelled Y coincides with the center of one of the original sampling points labelled X; the center of each subsampled point labelled Z coincides with a boundary between sample points labelled X. These are examples of two different sample registrations.

Taking a weighted average is also known as *low-pass filtering*, because the effect of the averaging is to remove high spatial frequencies. These filters are also called *downsampling filters*. With different weights one can also *high-pass filter*, i.e., selectively enhance the high spatial frequencies. High-pass filters are also known as *upsampling* filters.

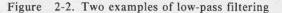
2.3 Two-dimensional arrays of samples O

For simplicity let us consider a digital image obtained by scanning a monochrome (grayscale) photograph. We create a two-dimensional array of samples, each sample with 8-bit precision. Although sampling grids other than rectangular are possible, JPEG has chosen to use only simple rectangular grids; we shall therefore limit our discussion to such grids. We shall have more to say about precision requirements in following sections, but one sample per byte (eight bits) is a convenient precision for computer storage of images. This precision is usually sufficient to give the illusion of a continuous range of grayscale values when the image is observed on a typical CRT display. Some applications, notably those dealing with medical images, may require higher precision (12 bits/sample or more).

CHAPTER 2. IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY



13



Each sample in a monochrome image is called a pixel or pel. *Pixel* is a contraction of "picture element" and is used in the display industry. *Pel* is a contraction for "print element" and is used in the printing industry. In modern usage the two are almost interchangeable, and the distinction between them has been lost. This is probably fortunate, since in many applications there is a need both to display and to print images. Note that in color images a set of samples is usually required to represent a single pixel.*

Precision and aspect ratio are two attributes of a sample. Precision determines how many levels of intensity can be represented and is expressed as the number of bits/sample. Aspect ratio describes the shape of the sample, and this is determined by the relationship between the physical size of the image and the rectangular grid of samples. If the shape of the sample is not the same between input and output devices, geometric distortion will result.

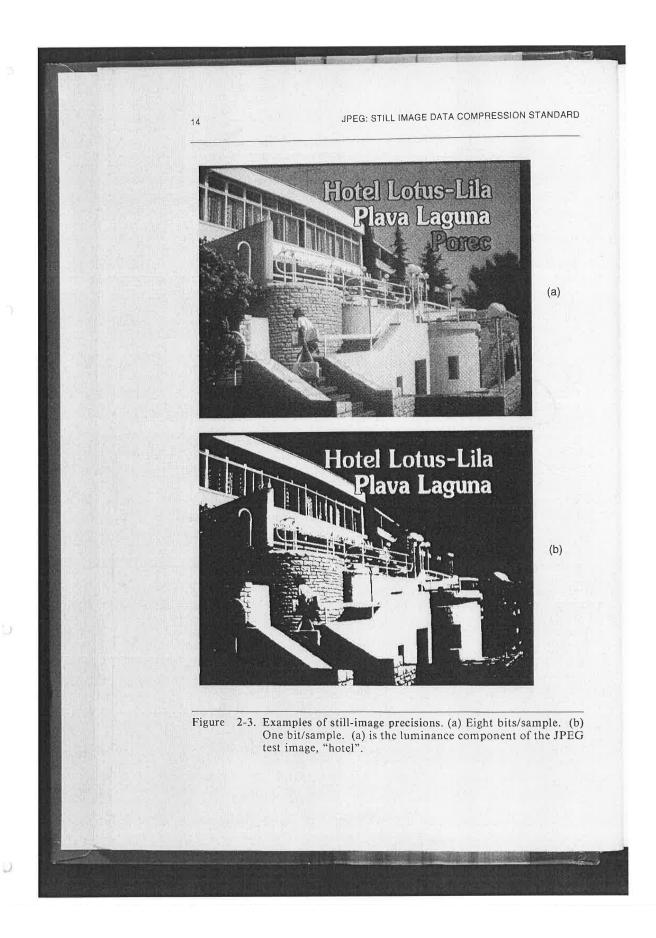
Figure 2-3 illustrates the appearance of an image at three different precisions. Figure 2-3*a* shows an image at 8 bits/sample, Figure 2-3*b* shows the same image at one bit/sample and Figure 2-3*c* shows this image at four bits/sample.

2.4 Digital image data types O

The examples in Figure 2-3 illustrate some of the different digital image data types. These are all examples of monochrome still images, where the

U

[•] If an appropriate color-encoding format is used for the analog signal, single samples can be used to represent color information. However, JPEG does not apply to color images sampled in this format.



CHAPTER 2. IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY



15

(c)

Figure 2-3 continued. (c) Four bits/sample.

term "still" is used to distinguish from the set of images that make up a motion sequence. Unless otherwise stated, the images should be assumed to be "still" in this book.

2.4.1 Grayscale O

At eight bits/sample, the example shown in Figure 2-3*a* has sufficient precision to be considered a grayscale or continuous-tone image. JPEG is designed for this class of data—data that are of high enough precision to give the appearance of continuity to an observer. JPEG can be used to compress limited-precision data, but may not be as efficient as alternative approaches designed for such data. A discontinuous representation such as a color-palette image must be remapped to a continuous representation before JPEG can be used effectively.

2.4.2 Binary image O

Figure 2-3b shows a binary or bi-level image that could be transmitted by a facsimile machine. These images have only one bit per sample and are usually images of text or line drawings in which the original has only two tones, black and white. The resolution of these images is usually very high, such that the eye would have trouble discerning subtle changes in grayscale value from sample to sample. At these higher resolutions, a process called *digital halftoning* creates the effect of continuous tones in a binary image by alternating between closely spaced black and white samples. The effect is similar to the technique used to reproduce photographs in newspapers.

Indeed, photographs can be regarded as the most limiting form of halftoning, in that the photographic grains are either white or black. However, the effective resolution required to resolve single grains is on the order of 5,000 pels/inch (2,000 pels/cm). Therefore, even at the highest resolutions currently used for binary facsimile images (400 pels/inch), digital halftoning is an imperfect substitute for true grayscale capability. The JBIG Draft International Standard discussed in Chapter 20 is designed for these binary images.

2.4.3 Limited bits/sample O

Figure 2-3c is an example of a lower-precision or limited bits/sample format that is typical of computer graphics. The bound between limited bits/sample and continuous tone is not rigorously defined, but can be taken to be about four bits/sample.

At intermediate resolutions, images of black/white documents can benefit from additional precision. A limited number of bits per sample can provide for grayscale in transition regions between black and white. This greatly improves the apparent quality of the images. The use of grayscale in this manner is sometimes called anti-aliasing and can be an effective tool for removing the "jaggies" in graphics images.

2.4.4 Color O

16

According to the trichromatic theory, the sensation of color is produced by selectively exciting three classes of receptors in the eye. Certain frequencies in the visible light spectrum will excite certain receptors, producing the effect of color. Furthermore, if we provide the same stimulus to these receptors from two different sources, the two sources will appear to have the same color.

In color imaging there are two basic ways of producing this selective excitation: additive color and subtractive color. Additive color is used with active light-emitting systems in which the light from sources of different colors is added together to produce the perceived color. Subtractive color is used with passive systems, in which light from a given source is selectively absorbed at different wavelengths, leaving only the wavelengths that will be perceived as the desired colors. Color can also be produced by other physical processes, such as refraction and interference, but these are simply alternative ways of creating additive or subtractive color.

In an additive color device such as a display CRT, the light is produced by three primary phosphors, red, green, and blue (RGB). These phosphors are excited separately by the electron beam in the CRT, and the light emitted from the three phosphors stimulates the three types of receptors in the eye to produce the perception of color. When excited in the right proportion, the three phosphors produce the perception of white light; the absence of excitation produces black.

Subtractive color is used in the printing industry. Three colors (and sometimes a fourth) are superimposed on a white reflective surface such as paper. The inks, typically cyan (a blue-green), magenta, and yellow (CMY), selectively absorb certain ranges of wavelengths of light. The eye

- 00

CHAPTER 2. IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

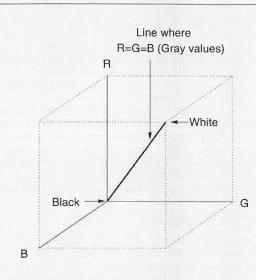


Figure 2-4. RGB (red-green-blue) color coordinate system. On the line labelled R=G=B are shades of gray ranging from black to white.

17

perceives the reflected light, which has not been absorbed; hence the term "subtractive." Where no ink is on the paper the light reflected is white; where all three inks are present, the light is (in principle) absorbed and the appearance is black. In practice, complete absorption is difficult to achieve in printing inks and a fourth ink, black (thus, CMYK, in which K stands for *blacK*), is used as well.

2.4.4.1 Color spaces/coordinates O

Many representations of color images are possible. The trichromatic theory tells us that, ideally, three arrays of samples (three components) should be sufficient to represent a color image.² However, output devices are limited, so not all colors can be obtained.

RGB is one example of a color representation requiring three independent values to describe the colors. Each of the values can be varied independently, and we can therefore create a three-dimensional space with the three components, R, G, and B, as independent coordinates. Colors are represented as points in this space, as shown in Figure 2-4. Note that shades of gray from black to white are found on the diagonal line in this plot. In general pixels in a color image have information from the samples of each component, and the color image is comprised of the twodimensional arrays of the component samples.

Color representations such as RGB or CMY are not always the most convenient. Other representations are available that use color components

that are closely related to the criteria used to describe color perception: brightness, hue, and saturation. Brightness describes the intensity of the light (revealing whether it is white, gray, or black) and this can be related to the luminance of the source. Hue describes what color is present (red, green, yellow, etc.) and this can be related to the dominant wavelength of the light source. Saturation describes how vivid the color is (very strong, pastel, nearly white) and this can be related to the purity or narrowness of the spectral distribution of the source.

Color spaces or color coordinate systems in which one component is the luminance and the other two components are related to hue and saturation are called luminance-chrominance representations. The luminance provides a grayscale version of the image (such as the image on a monochrome television receiver), and the chrominance components provide the extra information that converts the grayscale image to a color image. Luminance-chrominance representations are particularly important for good image compression.

2.4.4.2 Linear color transformations O

The luminance of a display system is the sum of the luminances of the red, green, and blue phosphors. For convenience, the values of the three colors, R, G, and B, are expressed by a relative scale from 0 to 1, where 0 indicates no excitation of the phosphor and 1 indicates maximum excitation. In addition, the display is adjusted so that a gray value between black and white results whenever the three primary signals, R (red), G (green) and B (blue), are equal. For a particular definition of red, green and blue, the luminance (Y) of any color can be calculated from the following weighted sum:³

$$Y = 0.3R + 0.6G + 0.1B$$
 [2-1]

The scaling is chosen such that the luminance is also expressed by a relative scale from 0 to 1 and the weights reflect the contributions of the individual primaries to the total luminance.

The term *chrominance* is defined as the difference between a color and a reference white at the same luminance. The chrominance information can therefore be expressed by a set of color differences, V and U, where V and U are defined by:

$$V = R - Y$$
[2-2]

U = B - Y[2-3]

These color differences are zero whenever R = G = B, as this condition produces gray, which has no chrominance. The V component controls colors ranging from red (V>0) to blue-green (V<0), whereas the U component controls colors ranging from blue (U>0) to yellow (U<0). Together with the luminance, these chrominance coordinates make up the color coordinate system known as YUV. Figure 2-5 illustrates the relationship between this YUV color space and the RGB color space.

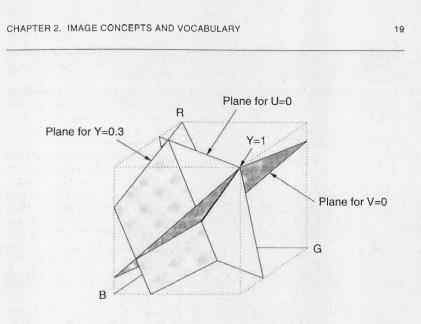


Figure 2-5. Relationship between the RGB and YUV coordinate systems

Chrominance values of zero are located on the diagonal where R = G = B, and the realizable range of YUV values is bounded by the RGB cube. The YUV color space is used in the European television systems.

Another color space, YIQ, is used in the North American television systems. The YIQ space is related to the YUV space as follows: Y is the same for both spaces whereas I and Q are related only to U and V. I and Q are given by:

I = 0.74 V - 0.27 U [2-4]

$$Q = 0.48V + 0.41U$$
 [2-5]

Still another color coordinate system, YCbCr, was used extensively in the development of the JPEG standard. This color coordinate system is closely related to YUV. It uses the same Y coordinate as the YUV system, whereas U and V are scaled and zero-shifted to produce the variables Cb and Cr, respectively. The equations are:

Cb = (U/2) + 0.5 [2-6]

$$Cr = (V/1.6) + 0.5$$
 [2-7]

J

With this scaling and zero shifting the chrominance values are always in the range 0 to 1. The values of Cb and Cr are sometimes multiplied by 255, so that they can be represented by an 8-bit integer.

In principle, a number of other color spaces, including the CIE (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) tristimulus values, can be related to these spaces by simple linear equations.

2.4.4.3 Uniform perceptual color spaces O

20

Although luminance-chrominance coordinates such as YUV are very convenient from the standpoint of ease of conversion to and from RGB, they suffer from one drawback: the amount of perceived color change produced by a fixed small change in these coordinates is quite nonuniform, and depends on the particular values of luminance and chrominance. Two color spaces. CIELUV and CIELAB, which provide a relatively uniform perceptual space for describing colors, have been defined. A uniform perceived change for given input change is a very desirable property, in that the precision required to express colors to a particular degree of fidelity can be more readily specified in a space with uniform perceptual characteristics. Unfortunately, the transformations between the linear spaces described in section 2.4.4.2 and these uniform perceptual spaces are relatively complex. Nonetheless, these spaces are expected to be used extensively in applications requiring precise color reproduction. Accurate color reproduction is a very complex subject and a complete discussion of it is well beyond the scope of this book.

2.4.4.4 Colorblindness of JPEG O

From the perspective of JPEG, the question of which coordinate system to use for color images is important only in the sense that a poor choice of color coordinates can adversely affect the compression. In terms of the structure of the compression algorithms, JPEG is "colorblind"; however, applications that use JPEG may not be.

2.4.4.5 Additional details about color O

Illumination has a very significant effect on the perception of color, as is well known to anyone who has tried to match colors under two different lighting conditions. The "white" used in the equations above assumes a particular illumination known as Standard Illuminant C.³

The range of colors that can be represented by any output device is limited. A display system can display colors only within a range dictated by the phosphors in the display. Since phosphors always emit a band of wavelengths, pure spectral colors can never be produced by a CRT.

Broadcast TV systems use a modified form of RGB known as gamma-corrected RGB. The "gamma correction" is made at the studio in order to correct for nonlinearities in television receiver CRTs. This is done for purposes of economy in manufacturing the receivers. Many modern display systems are relatively linear—that is, a set of equal-intensity steps will produce on the screen a corresponding set of grayscale steps that have a relatively uniform set of intensity changes. In critical applications the

CHAPTER 2. IMAGE CONCEPTS AND VOCABULARY

display response should be measured and corrections should be applied to the data to linearize the displayed output.

21

In low-cost computer display systems the display storage is sometimes limited to eight bits/pixel. This restricts the possible set of colors to 256 distinct values—the "palette." These colors do not form a continuous set; rather, the entries in the palette can be arbitrarily assigned. The JPEG algorithms assume continuity, and are not appropriate for direct compression of palette representations. However, JPEG is suitable for any of the continuous representations of color. It can be used for palette representations if the palette entries are converted to one of the continuous three-component representations before compression is performed.

2.4.5 Image sequences O

Sometimes images come in correlated sets of two-dimensional arrays. One of the most common of these is moving pictures. Each frame of a movie consists of a two-dimensional array of pixels, but in areas in which there is no motion, the correlation (similarity) between images is very high. MPEG has a defined a new standard that is designed to take advantage of this interframe correlation.* MPEG can achieve about three times the compression of JPEG, but requires several frame buffers. JPEG can be implemented without any frame buffers. JPEG compresses each frame independently, and is almost symmetric in terms of complexity between encoders and decoders. For these reasons, some applications requiring motion sequences use JPEG in spite of the lower compression performance.

Some medical applications such as CAT (computer-aided tomography) scans use sequences of images. However, in unpublished research Peng⁴ found that the correlation between images is not high enough to improve the compression significantly. This occurs because the sampling interval between images is typically much larger than the sampling intervals within the images.

2.5 Large amounts of data O

The amount of data in a digital image can be extremely large—even millions of bytes. Assuming one byte per pixel, a 320×240 pixel image (which is relatively small) occupies 76,800 bytes of storage. This is equivalent to about 25 pages of dense text at one byte per character. An IBM[®] PC VGA display has 640×480 pixels, and images for this display occupy 307,200 bytes of storage. Displays are now available exceeding 2000×2000 pixels and images for these exceed four million bytes. Color images for display can require as much as three times more data, and color images for printing may require even more data. Motion sequences may be still more demanding.

This is one of the motivating factors behind image compression. Modern workstations and personal computers are capable of displaying

^{*} A brief review of MPEG is found in Chapter 20.

high-resolution images, and the eye can sometimes analyze one image in a fraction of a second. It is very easy to construct applications that quickly exceed the capacity of hard-disk and even optical-disk storage. Properly used, JPEG compression can reduce the storage requirements by more than an order of magnitude, and may improve the system response time in the process.

υ

IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS

5.1 Basic structure of image compression systems O

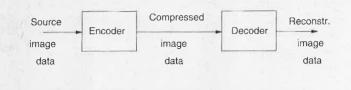
Image compression is the art and science of reducing (compressing) the number of bits required to describe an image. The two basic components of an image compression system are illustrated in Figure 5-1. The device that compresses the "source" image (the original digital image) is called an encoder and the output of this encoder is called compressed data (or coded data). The compressed data may be either stored or transmitted, but are at some point fed to a decoder. The decoder is a device that recreates or "reconstructs" an image from the compressed data.

5.1.1 Encoder structure O

In general, a data compression encoding system can be broken into the following basic parts: an encoder model, an encoder statistical model, and an entropy encoder. The encoder model generates a sequence of "descriptors" that is an abstract representation of the image. The statistical model converts these descriptors into symbols and passes them on to the entropy encoder. The entropy encoder compresses the symbols to form

65

)





66

the compressed data. Figure 5-2 shows a sketch of this general encoder structure.

The two main functional blocks in Figure 5-2 divide the system in a way that is slightly different from the classical division found in many image compression books. Figure 5-2 follows the convention used in the JPEG documentation, where the division of the system is made at a point that cleanly separates the modeling from parts that are dependent on the particular form of entropy coding used. The traditional "symbols"— the items that are assigned codes—are generated by the statistical model inside the JPEG entropy encoder. We use the term "descriptors" here so that there is no confusion with the more traditional terminology.

The encoder may require external tables—that is, tables specified externally when the encoder is invoked. We define two classes of these tables. Model tables are those tables that are needed in the procedures that generate the descriptors. Entropy-coding tables are those tables needed by the JPEG entropy-coding procedures.

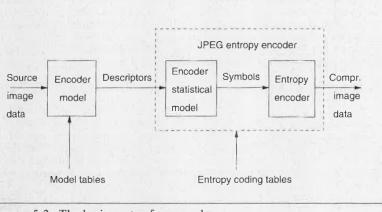


Figure 5-2. The basic parts of an encoder

Q

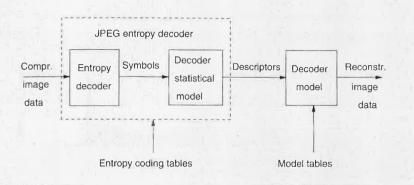


Figure 5-3. The basic parts of a decoder

5.1.2 Decoder structure O

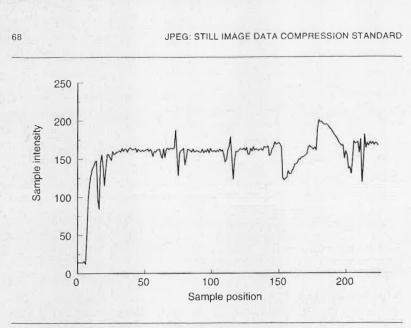
A data compression decoding system can be broken into basic parts that have an inverse function relative to the parts of the encoding system. As shown in Figure 5-3, the compressed data are fed to the JPEG entropy decoder. The entropy decoder decodes a sequence of descriptors that exactly matches the sequence that was compressed by the entropy encoder. The sequence of descriptors is converted to a reconstructed image by the decoder model. The decoder requires the same model tables and entropycoding tables as the encoder. If they are not known to both *a priori*, the encoder must transmit the tables as part of the compressed data.

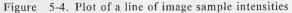
Unless the compressed image data have been corrupted (by errors introduced during storage or transmission), the descriptor input to the entropy encoder and the output from the entropy decoder are identical. Any loss or distortion, any difference between the source and reconstructed image data, is introduced only by the encoder and decoder models. One of the goals of image compression is to minimize the amount of distortion, especially the amount of visible distortion, for a given amount of compression.

Models that introduce distortion are termed "lossy" models, whereas models that allow no distortion are termed "lossless." The entropy encoding and decoding systems are also "lossless," as this is a term applied to any coding system or subsystem in which the input to the encoder is exactly matched by the output from the decoder.

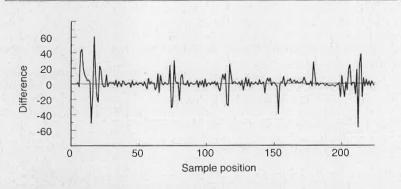
5.2 Image compression models O

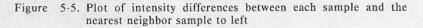
The encoder model is defined as a unit that generates a sequence of descriptors. In this section we shall give some examples that should make this definition a little less abstract. Most of the examples given here are actually used in JPEG.



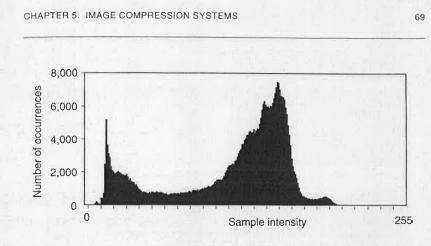


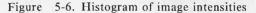
Suppose we have some image data that we need to code. We could simply feed the sample values to the entropy encoder, in which case the encoder model in Figure 5-2 is essentially an empty box. This is the simplest possible encoder model; it is also one of the poorest from the standpoint of compression of grayscale images. It is known as "pulse code modulation," or PCM. For PCM the set of descriptors is all possible values of the samples.





Q





5.2.1 DPCM model O

A much better model is realized if one attempts to predict the sample value from a combination of samples already coded in the image (the decoder must know those values too, so it can make the same prediction). For example, assuming we are coding from left to right, we might use the sample to the left as an estimate for the current sample. Then, the descriptor fed to the entropy encoder can be the difference between the sample being coded and the sample to the left. Since in a continuous-tone image the differences between one sample and the next are likely to be small, it is more efficient to encode the difference values than to encode each sample independently. This class of coding models is known as "differential pulse code modulation," or DPCM. For DPCM the set of descriptors is all possible difference values.

Figure 5-4 shows a plot of a typical line of image data. Figure 5-5 shows the corresponding differences between each sample and the sample immediately to the left. Note that the difference values are usually close to zero. This may be seen more clearly from the histogram of intensities for an entire image in Figure 5-6 and the histogram of the differences in Figure 5-7. The histogram of differences is tightly clustered around zero, indicating that small differences are very probable.

Given a known starting value, differences from one sample to the next can be used to exactly reconstruct the original intensity values. Therefore the set of differences is a representation that is entirely equivalent to the original intensity values. However, creating a representation in which a few events or symbols are very probable is important for data compression. The essence of data compression is the assignment of shorter code words to the more probable symbols, and longer code words to the less probable symbols. We might suspect, therefore, that DPCM gives better compression than does PCM, and indeed, it does. Phrased another way, the better performance of DPCM relative to PCM is due to the high degree of



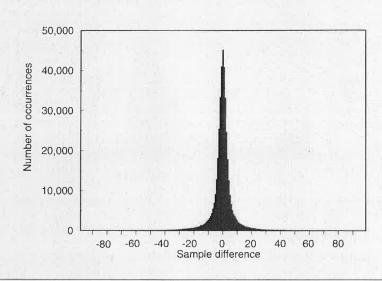


Figure 5-7. Histogram of differences between each sample and the nearest neighbor sample to left

correlation found in most images. Only if there is strong correlation will the small differences be very probable.

A schematic of a DPCM encoder model that uses the neighboring sample to the left as the prediction is shown in Figure 5-8. The corresponding decoder model is shown in Figure 5-9.

In these figures subtraction is indicated by "-" and addition by "+." There is an implicit storage of at least one sample in both schematics, as differences are always calculated relative to the previous sample."

In two places JPEG uses forms of DPCM similar to that shown in Figure 5-8: in the lossless coding mode and in the coding of the DCT DC coefficient. Note that in lossless coding other predictors besides the value of the neighboring sample to the left are allowed. For many images the most effective predictor is an average of the samples immediately above and to the left.

• Note that as shown here, this DPCM model is lossless. Many forms of DPCM quantize the difference values, scaling them in a manner that is quite similar to the way DCT coefficients are quantized. The decoder must rescale the differences, and the net effect is to introduce distortion between encoder input and decoder output.

CHAPTER 5. IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS

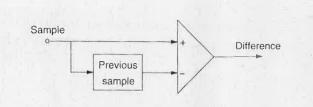


Figure 5-8. DPCM encoder model

5.2.2 DCT model O

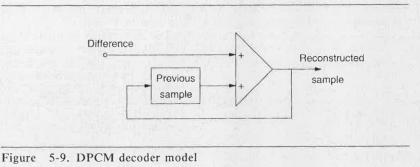
The DCT (FDCT and IDCT) and the associated quantization and dequantization of the coefficients are part of the encoder and decoder models used in the lossy JPEG modes. This encoder model is sketched in Figure 5-10.

Quantization is done in the box labelled "Q." Note that the DC term is fed separately to an additional stage containing a DPCM model. The DC differences and AC coefficients are the descriptors that are fed to the entropy-coding block. The entropy-coding block codes these two classes of descriptors differently.

The corresponding decoder model for the lossy JPEG modes is shown in Figure 5-11. The dequantization is done in the box labelled "DQ."

The FDCT, quantization, dequantization, and IDCT are the cause of the distortion in the images reconstructed by a JPEG lossy decoder. Arithmetic approximations in the integer arithmetic typically used in computing the FDCT and IDCT introduce a small amount of this distortion. The principal source of loss or distortion, however, is the quantization and dequantization of the coefficients.

The quantization of each coefficient is done independently, and can therefore be matched to the response of the human visual system. It is this aspect that makes the JPEG lossy modes so effective. However, the reader should recognize that the quantization rules are defined for a particular set of viewing conditions, image content, and perhaps even application



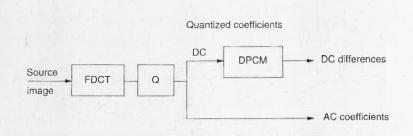


Figure 5-10. Encoder model for DCT systems

demands. If these change, the distortion introduced by quantization may become a problem. An example of this can be seen by comparing the image in Figure 1-1b to the enlarged section in Figure 5-12. Distortion that is negligible for normal viewing conditions becomes objectionable in a close-up.

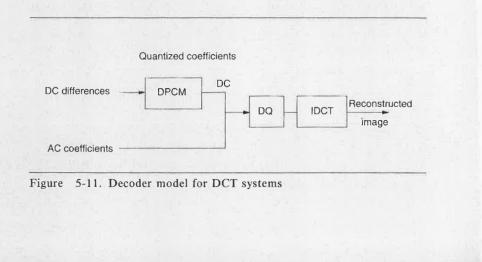
There are additional attributes of DCT models that help to simplify the statistical modeling, one of them being the almost ideal decorrelation between the DCT basis functions.

5.2.3 Other models O

72

The DPCM model is one particular instance of a general class of coding known as *predictive coding*. In predictive coding information already sent is used to predict future values and the differences are coded. The DCT model is also a particular form of a general class of coding known as *transform coding*. There are many other classes of coding models.

Because our goal in this book is to provide a complete review of the technologies that apply specifically to JPEG, we shall not discuss the many other models that have been devised for image coding. We note, however, that excellent implementations of block truncation coding, vector



Ú,

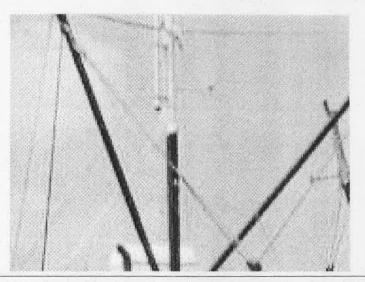


Figure 5-12. Visible distortion in a close-up. When a portion of Figure 1-1 d is enlarged 4x horizontally and vertically, the distortion is far more visible.

quantization, other transform coding schemes, sub-band coding, and several predictive coding schemes were considered by JPEG as candidates for the standard. JPEG's selection in January, 1988, of a DCT-based approach for lossy compression reflects the fact that of all the proposals submitted, the DCT provided the best image quality for a given bit rate. This is discussed in more detail in the chapter on JPEG history. For a comprehensive review of image compression models we refer the reader to two excellent texts on image compression.^{1, 34}

5.3 JPEG entropy encoder and entropy decoder structures O

JPEG uses two techniques for entropy coding: Huffman coding³⁵ and arithmetic coding. Huffman coding, devised about 40 years ago, is the more familiar of the two, is computationally simpler, and is simpler to implement. However, it requires the code tables to be known at the start of entropy coding. Arithmetic coding provides systematically higher performance (typically 10% or more) and one-pass adaptive coding in which the "code book" adapts dynamically to the data being coded. In this section we shall only introduce the major functional blocks in these entropy coders. The principles of entropy coding and the actual coding procedures will be described in a later chapter.

Inside an entropy coder there are four basic building blocks: a "statistical model," an "adaptor," a storage area, and an encoder. The way

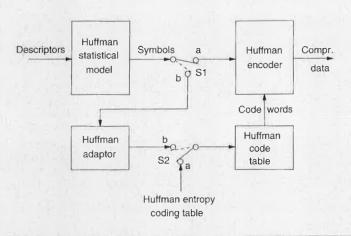


Figure 5-13. Huffman entropy encoder

74

the building blocks are linked together is a function of the particular entropy coding. The statistical model translates the descriptors into "symbols," each symbol being assigned a particular code word or probability.' The adapter is responsible for the assignment of code words (Huffman coding) or probability estimates (arithmetic coding) needed by the encoder. The storage area contains the Huffman code table or the arithmetic-coding probability estimates. With the help of the code words or probability estimates in the storage area, the encoder converts the symbols to bits of compressed data.

The symbols created by the statistical model are members of an "alphabet" that contains all possible symbols that the model can generate. Usually, some of these symbols are quite probable and some are very improbable. The objective in entropy coding is to assign short code words to the very probable symbols and longer code words to the less probable symbols. Samuel Morse did this in an intuitive way more than a century ago when he invented Morse code. When the code assignment is done in an optimal way, the result is entropy coding.

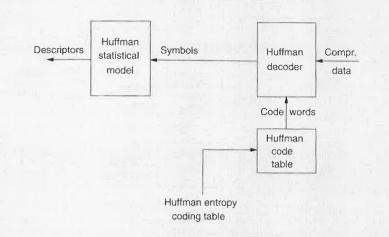
5.3.1 Huffman entropy encoder and decoder structures O

The four basic building blocks of the Huffman entropy encoder are illustrated in Figure 5-13. The Huffman statistical model converts the descriptors into the actual symbols that are coded. For example, the JPEG

Ũ

^{*} Although statistical considerations are also important in the design of the model that produces the descriptor sequences, such considerations are not a part of the statistical model.

CHAPTER 5. IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS



75

Figure 5-14. Huffman entropy decoder

Huffman statistical model converts 16 contiguous zero AC coefficients into a single symbol meaning a run of 16 zeros. This type of conversion is usually done to improve the efficiency of the Huffman codes. The symbols created by the statistical model are directed by switch S1 to either the Huffman encoder or the Huffman adaptor.

Whenever the adaptor is used, two passes through the data are required. In the first pass the symbols are fed to the adaptor, in which the data is analyzed and used to create a "custom" Huffman code table. (Huffman code tables are the "entropy coding tables" for a Huffman entropy coder.) The second pass then encodes the data. Since two passes through the data are not always convenient, switch S2 allows "fixed" Huffman code tables from an external source to be used instead. Custom tables typically improve the coding efficiency by a few percent relative to the efficiency achieved with fixed tables.

The Huffman entropy decoder is illustrated in Figure 5-14. The Huffman compressed data are decoded into symbols by the Huffman decoder block. The code words always come from a fixed Huffman code table that is loaded into the Huffman code table storage area before decoding begins. The data needed to generate this table may be incorporated into the compressed data. The symbols are translated back into the descriptors by the Huffman statistical model block.

5.3.2 Arithmetic entropy encoder and decoder structures O

The four basic building blocks of the arithmetic-coding entropy encoder are illustrated in Figure 5-15.

JPEG uses an adaptive binary arithmetic coder that can code only two symbols, 0 and 1. (This may seem restrictive until you realize that com-

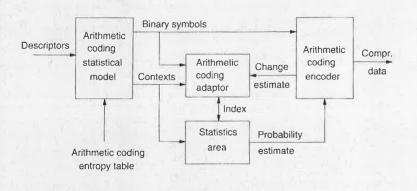


Figure 5-15. Arithmetic entropy encoder

76

puters also use only binary symbols.) Therefore, the arithmetic coding statistical model must translate the descriptors into a set of binary decisions. The statistical model also generates a "context" that selects a particular probability estimate to be used in coding the binary decision. The binary decisions and contexts are fed in parallel to both the arithmetic-coding adaptor and the arithmetic coder. The arithmetic-coding "conditioning table" (the arithmetic coding version of the entropy-coding table) provides parameters needed in generating the contexts.

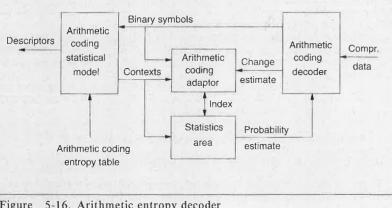


Figure 5-16. Arithmetic entropy decoder

CHAPTER 5. IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS

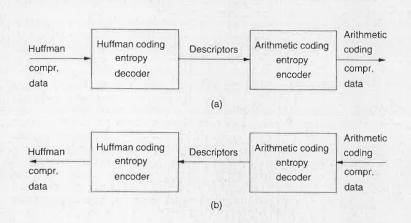


Figure 5-17. Transcoding between entropy coders

The arithmetic encoder encodes the symbol using the probability estimate supplied to it. In the process of coding, it also keeps an approximate count of the 0's and 1's, and occasionally signals the adaptor to tell it to make the probability estimate for a particular context larger or smaller.

The arithmetic coder is identical to that adopted by JBIG (see Chapter 20). Consequently, everything but the statistical model and perhaps the size of the probability storage area are unchanged when used by JBIG. Note that the JPEG/JBIG arithmetic entropy coder is a single-pass adaptive coder.

The arithmetic entropy decoder is illustrated in Figure 5-16. The compressed data are fed to the decoder, which, with the benefit of the same probability estimates used for encoding, determines the sequence of binary symbols. The binary symbols are in turn translated back into descriptors by the arithmetic-coding statistical model. Note that the decoder and encoder statistical models generate the same context for a given binary decision. In general, the contexts, adaptation, and probability estimates must be identical in the entropy encoder and decoder.

5.4 Transcoding O

Because the Huffman and arithmetic entropy coders encode and decode the same set of descriptors, it is possible to "transcode" between these systems. Figure 5-17 illustrates this procedure for a conversion from Huffman compressed data to arithmetic-coding compressed data. Of course, transcoding is a reversible process and compressed data generated by an arithmetic coder can be transcoded to Huffman coded compressed data.

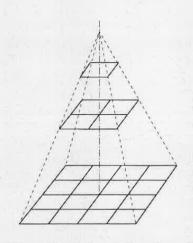


Figure 5-18. Pyramidal coding using the JPEG hierarchical mode

5.5 JPEG lossless and lossy compression O

78

JPEG defines both lossy and lossless compression processes. The lossy JPEG processes are based on the Discrete Cosine Transform (DCT), whereas the lossless processes are based on forms of DPCM.

Lossy JPEG DCT-based compression is particularly effective in minimizing visible distortion. The improvement in compression that results when a small amount of visible distortion is allowed can be quite significant. Color images that can be compressed by a ratio of about 2:1 with the JPEG lossless techniques can often be compressed with JPEG lossy techniques by more than 20:1 yet have nearly imperceptible levels of visible distortion in the reconstructed images.*

^{*} When judging compression for a given degree of visual distortion, compression ratios can be misleading. Compression ratios can be artificially inflated by using excessively high precisions or too many samples in the chrominance components. It would be better to state that nearly imperceptible distortion is achieved at compressions of a little more than 1 bit/pixel with the JPEG lossy techniques. Of course, bits/pixel can also be misleading, as it can be radically affected by changes in viewing conditions and picture resolution. Really meaningful comparison between compression systems requires a fixed set of viewing conditions, a carefully calibrated display system, and a set of images with scene content and resolution that are representative of the application. The real cost in storage and transmission comes from the amount of compressed data required to represent the image at some particular quality.

CHAPTER 5. IMAGE COMPRESSION SYSTEMS

5.6 Sequential and progressive coding O

A sequential encoder codes the image in a single scan or pass through the data. The decoder necessarily follows the same order in decoding the data, reconstructing the image at full quality in a single scan in the same order as it was encoded.

A progressive encoder encodes the image in two or more scans or passes through the data, first coding an approximation of the entire image and then coding finer details for the whole image with each succeeding scan. The decoder follows the same order in decoding, first reconstructing the approximation of the image, and then adding finer detail with each succeeding scan.

The particular form of progression defined by JPEG can provide a final image that is identical to that of the JPEG sequential mode. Furthermore, under the right conditions, slightly better compression is achieved with the JPEG progressive mode than with the JPEG sequential mode. Examples of JPEG sequential and progressive encoding will be given in Chapter 6.

5.7 Hierarchical coding O

An alternative form of progressive coding known as hierarchical coding uses a set of successively smaller images that are created by "downsampling" (low-pass filtering and subsampling) the preceding larger image in the set. Then, starting with the smallest image in the set the image set is coded with increasing resolution. After the first stage, each lower-resolution image is scaled up to the next resolution (upsampled) and used as a prediction for the following stage. When the set of images is stacked, it sometimes resembles a pyramid (Figure 5-18). Consequently, this form of coding is also called pyramidal coding.

Just as smaller images generated as part of a hierarchical progression can be scaled up to full resolution, full-resolution images generated as part of a nonhierarchical progression can be scaled down to smaller sizes. These scalings are done in the decoder, and are not restricted to powers of 2.

5.8 Compression measures O

The amount of compression that an encoder achieves can be measured in two different ways. Sometimes the parameter of interest is compression ratio—the ratio between the original source data and the compressed data sizes. However, for continuous-tone images another measure, the average number of compressed bits/pixel, is sometimes a more useful parameter for judging the performance of an encoding system. For a given image, however, the two are simply different ways of expressing the same compression.

APPENDIX A

ISO DIS 10918-1 REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES

The ISO Draft International Standard 10918 Part 1 is reproduced in this appendix with the permission of the ISO secretariat.

The ISO IS 10918-1 incorporates many minor editorial changes to the DIS. The only major change in the document organization was the interchanging of Clause 3 (Introduction) and Clause 4 (Definitions, Abbreviations, and Symbols). Clause 3 was also renamed "General."

In Annex L, a new patent was added as relevant to arithmetic coding¹⁸⁵ and another added as relevant to hierarchical coding with a final lossless stage.¹⁸⁶ Another patent, U.S. Pat. No 4,725,885,¹⁸⁷ that had been mistakenly cited as U.S Pat. No. 4,725,884 was removed as no longer relevant. Some references were added to annex M.^{49, 58, 188}

In Annex D including Figures D.8, D.9, D.10, and D.12, the stack counter symbol was changed from SC to ST, in order to avoid confusion with the context-index for coding the correction bits in successive approximation coding (SC). In Annex B the arithmetic conditioning table identifier was changed from Ta to Tb in order to avoid confusion with Ta_j , the AC entropy table selector for the *j*th component in a scan.

The missing "1"s were inserted into the third column at event count 184 in Table K.7 and event count 222 in Table K.8.

Table A-1. Standards nomenclature

Nomenclature	Equivalent expression
clause	chapter
subclause	section or paragraph
annex	appendix
shall	is required to
shall not	is not allowed
should	ought to/recommended to
should not	ought not to/not recommended to .
may	is permitted
need not	it is not required that
can	it is possible to
cannot	it is impossible to

Other minor changes were made to achieve consistency in the symbols, resulting in the following additions to the list of symbols in subclause 4.2 in the DIS.

Bx	byte modified by a carry-over
CX	conditional exchange
d_{ji}^k EC	d_{ii} for component k
ÉC	event count
ECS	ith entropy-coded segment
EOB0, EOB1,	, EOB14 run length categories for EOB runs
MCU_i	<i>i</i> th MCU
MPS(S)	more probable symbol for context-index S
ST	stack counter
Tb	arithmetic conditioning table destination identifier
Тс	Huffman coding or arithmetic coding table class
Th	Huffman table destination identifier
X 'values'	values within the quotes are hexadecimal

Table A-1 lists some of the special nomenclature used in standards documents.¹⁸⁹ It is important to notice the distinction that is made between "shall," "may," and "can." Subclauses labelled as "NOTE" always convey information. They

Subclauses labelled as "NOTE" always convey information. They cannot be used to specify requirements, although they may call attention to a requirement specified elsewhere.

Implementers should obtain the IS document rather than relying upon the DIS document. In the U.S. the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) is the distributor.

CCITT RECOMMENDATION T.81

DIGITAL COMPRESSION AND CODING OF CONTINUOUS-TONE STILL IMAGES

337

PART I: REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES

		Contents P	age
For	eword		iii
1	Scope		1
2	Norma	ative references	1
3	Introd	uction	2
4	Defini	itions, abbreviations, and symbols	14
5	Intercl	hange format requirements	27
6	Encod	ler requirements	28
7	Decod	der requirements	29
An	nex A	Mathematical definitions	A-1
An	nex B	Compressed data formats	B-1
An	nex C	Huffman table specification	C-1
An	nex D	Arithmetic coding	D-1
An	nex E	Encoder and decoder control procedures	E-1
An	nex F	Sequential DCT-based mode of operation	F-1
An	nex G	Progressive DCT-based mode of operation	G-1
An	nex H	Lossless mode of operation	H-1
An	nex J	Hierarchical mode of operation	
An	nex K	Examples and guidelines	K-1
An	nex L	Patents	L-1
Ап	nex M	Bibliography	M-1

U

Foreword

This document (Part 1) is at the Draft International Standard (DIS) level of the ISO/IEC JTC1 process for the development of International Standards. After successful balloting and any necessary revision, this DIS will be promoted to International Standard (IS).

This CCITT Recommendation | International Standard, Digital Compression and Coding of Continuous-tone Still Images, is published as two parts:

- Part 1: Requirements and guidelines

- Part 2: Compliance testing

This part, Part 1, sets out requirements and implementation guidelines for continuous-tone still image encoding and decoding processes, and for the coded representation of compressed image data for interchange between applications. These processes and representations are intended to be generic, that is, to be applicable to a broad range of applications for colour and grayscale still images within communications and computer systems. Part 2, which is now being drafted and which is expected to enter the CD review process six to nine months after this Part 1, sets out tests for determining whether implementations comply with the requirements for the various encoding and decoding processes specified in Part 1.

The user's attention is called to the possibility that - for some of the coding processes specified herein - compliance with this International Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. See Annex L for further information.

The committee which has prepared this Specification is ISO/IEC JTC1/SC2/WG10, Photographic Image Coding, in collaboration with CCITT SGVIII. Prior to the establishment of WG10 in 1990, the committee existed as an Ad Hoc group, known as the Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG), of ISO/IEC JTC1/SC2/WG8, Both the committee and the processes it has developed for standardization continue to be known informally by the name JPEG. The technical content of this Specification is identical (except for various corrections) to that of Revision 8 of the working document "JPEG Draft Technical Specification" (JPEG-8-R8).

The "joint" in JPEG refers to the committee's close but informal collaboration with the Special Rapporteur's committee Q.16 of CCITT SGVIII. In this collaboration, WG10 has performed the work of selecting, developing, documenting, and testing the generic compression processes. CCITT SGVIII has provided the requirements which these processes must satisfy to be useful for specific image communications applications such as facsimile, videotex, and audiographic conferencing. The intent is that the generic processes will be incorporated into the various CCITT Recommendations for terminal equipment for these applications.

Other international organizations which have contributed to the preparation of this Specification include:

- ISO/IEC JTC1/SC18/WG5 ODA Content Architecture and Colour;

- International Press Telecommunications Council (IPTC).

In addition to the applications addressed by the international organizations above, the JPEG committee has developed a compression standard to meet the needs of other applications as well, including desktop publishing, graphic arts, medical imaging, and scientific imaging.

iii

Ì

Annexes A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, and J are normative, and thus form an integral part of this Specification. Annexes K, L and M are informative and thus do not form an integral part of this Specification.

This Specification aims to follow the procedures of CCITT and ISO/IEC JTC1 on "Presentation of CCITT | ISO/IEC Common Text," currently under elaboration by CCITT and ISO/IEC JTC1. The alignment of this Specification to the final version of the above joint drafting rules might result in minor editorial changes to this Specification. It is envisaged that the final CCITT Recommendation | International Standard shall fully conform with the joint drafting rules of CCITT and ISO/IEC JTC1.

iv

340

υ

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD DIS 10918-1 CCITT RECOMMENDATION T.81

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY -

341

DIGITAL COMPRESSION AND CODING OF CONTINUOUS-TONE STILL IMAGES

PART 1: REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES

1 Scope

This CCITT Recommendation | International Standard is applicable to continuous-tone - grayscale or colour - digital still image data. It is applicable to a wide range of applications which require use of compressed images. It is not applicable to bi-level image data.

This Specification

- specifies processes for converting source image data to compressed image data;
- specifies processes for converting compressed image data to reconstructed image data;
- gives guidance on how to implement these processes in practice;
- specifies coded representations for compressed image data.

NOTE - This Specification does not specify a complete coded image representation. Such representations may include certain parameters, such as aspect ratio and colour space designation, which are application-dependent.

2 Normative references

None

3 Introduction

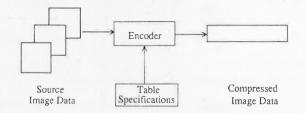
342

The purpose of this clause is to give an informative overview of the elements specified in this Specification. Another purpose is to introduce many of the terms which are defined in clause 4. These terms are printed in *italics* upon first usage in this clause.

3.1 Elements specified in this Specification

There are three elements specified in this Specification:

- An encoder is an embodiment of an encoding process. As shown in Figure 1, an encoder takes as input digital source image data and table specifications, and by means of a specified set of procedures generates as output compressed image data.
- 2) A decoder is an embodiment of a decoding process. As shown in Figure 2, a decoder takes as input compressed image data and table specifications, and by means of a specified set of procedures generates as output digital reconstructed image data.
- 3) The interchange format, shown in Figure 3, is a compressed image data representation which includes all table specifications used in the encoding process. The interchange format is for exchange between application environments.





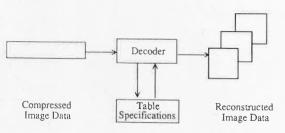
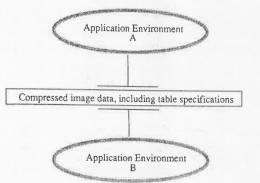


Figure 2 - Decoder

2



343

Figure 3 - Interchange format for compressed image data

Figures 1 and 2 illustrate the general case for which the *continuous-tone* source and reconstructed image data consist of multiple *components*. (A *colour* image consists of multiple components; a *grayscale* image consists only of a single component). A significant portion of this Specification is concerned with how to handle multiple-component images in a flexible, application-independent way.

These figures are also meant to show that the same tables specified for an encoder to use to compress a particular image must be provided to a decoder to reconstruct that image. However, this Specification does not specify how applications should associate tables with compressed image data, nor how they should represent source image data generally within their specific environments.

Consequently, this Specification also specifies the interchange format shown in Figure 3, in which table specifications are included within compressed image data. An image compressed with a specified encoding process within one application environment, A, is passed to a different environment, B, by means of the interchange format. The interchange format does not specify a complete coded image representation. Application-dependent information, e.g. colour space, is outside the scope of this Specification.

3.2 Lossy and lossless compression

This Specification specifies two *classes* of encoding and decoding processes, *lossy* and *lossless* processes. Those based on the *discrete cosine transform* (DCT) are lossy, thereby allowing substantial compression to be achieved while producing a reconstructed image with high visual fidelity to the encoder's source image.

The simplest DCT-based *coding process* is referred to as the *baseline sequential* process. It provides a capability which is sufficient for many applications. There are additional DCT-based processes which extend the baseline sequential process to a broader range of applications. In any decoder using extended DCT-based decoding processes, the baseline decoding process is required to be present in order to provide a default decoding capability.



The second class of coding processes is not based upon the DCT and is provided to meet the needs of applications requiring lossless compression. These lossless encoding and decoding processes are used independently of any of the DCT-based processes.

A table summarizing the relationship among these lossy and lossless coding processes is included in 3.11.

The amount of compression provided by any of the various processes is dependent on the characteristics of the particular image being compressed, as well as on the picture quality desired by the application and the desired speed of compression and decompression.

3.3 DCT-based coding

Figure 4 shows the main procedures for all encoding processes based on the DCT. It illustrates the special case of a single-component image; this is an appropriate simplification for overview purposes, because all processes specified in this Specification operate on each image component independently.

In the encoding process the input component's *samples* are grouped into 8x8 *blocks*, and each block is transformed by the *forward DCT* (FDCT) into a set of 64 values referred to as *DCT coefficients*. One of these values is referred to as the *DC coefficient* and the other 63 as the *AC coefficients*.

Each of the 64 coefficients is then *quantized* using one of 64 corresponding values from a *quantization table* (determined by one of the table specifications shown in Figure 4). No default values for quantization tables are specified in this Specification; applications may specify values which customize picture quality for their particular image characteristics, display devices, and viewing conditions.

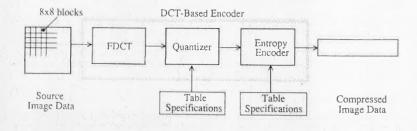


Figure 4 - DCT-based encoder simplified diagram

4

After quantization, the DC coefficient and the 63 AC coefficients are prepared for *entropy encoding*, as shown in Figure 5. The previous quantized DC coefficient is used to predict the current quantized DC coefficient, and the difference is encoded. The 63 quantized AC coefficients undergo no such differential encoding, but are converted into a one-dimensional *zig-zag sequence*, as shown in Figure 5.

The quantized coefficients are then passed to an entropy encoding procedure which compresses the data further. One of two entropy coding procedures can be used, as described in 3.6. If *Huffman encoding* is used, *Huffman table* specifications must be provided to the encoder. If *arithmetic encoding* is used, arithmetic coding *conditioning table* specifications must be provided.

Figure 6 shows the main procedures for all DCT-based decoding processes. Each step shown performs essentially the inverse of its corresponding main procedure within the encoder. The entropy decoder decodes the zig-zag sequence of quantized DCT coefficients. After *dequantization* the DCT coefficients are transformed to an 8x8 block of samples by the *inverse* DCT (IDCT).

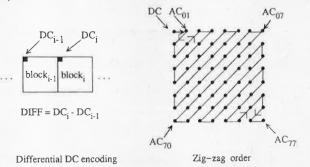
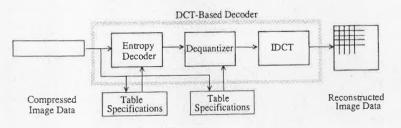
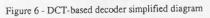


Figure 5 - Preparation of quantized coefficients for entropy encoding





3.4 Lossless coding

346

Figure 7 shows the main procedures for the lossless encoding processes. A *predictor* combines the reconstructed values of up to three neighborhood samples at positions a, b, and c to form a prediction of the sample at position x as shown in Figure 8. This prediction is then subtracted from the actual value of the sample at position x, and the difference is losslessly entropy-coded by either the form the difference of the sample at position and the difference is losslessly entropy-coded by either the form. by either Huffman or arithmetic coding.

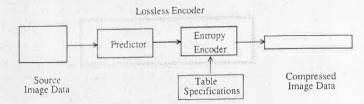


Figure 7 - Lossless encoder simplified diagram

С	b	-
a	x	_
u	-	

Figure 8 - 3-sample prediction neighborhood

This encoding process may also be used in a slightly modified way, whereby the *precision* of the input samples is reduced by one or more bits prior to the lossless coding. This achieves higher compression than the lossless process (but lower compression than the DCT-based processes for equivalent visual fidelity), and limits the reconstructed image's worst-case sample error to the amount of input precision reduction.

3.5 Modes of operation

There are four distinct *modes of operation* under which the various coding processes are defined: *sequential DCT-based, progressive DCT-based,* lossless, and *hierarchical.* (Implementations are not required to provide all of these). The lossless mode of operation was described in 3.4. The other modes of operation are compared as follows.

For the sequential DCT-based mode, 8x8 sample blocks are typically input block by block from left to right, and *block-row* by block-row from top to bottom. After a block has been quantized and prepared for entropy encoding, all 64 of its quantized DCT coefficients can be immediately entropy encoded and output as part of the compressed image data (as was described in 3.3), thereby minimizing coefficient storage requirements.

6

υ

For the progressive DCT-based mode, 8x8 blocks are also typically encoded in the same order, but in multiple *scans* through the image. This is accomplished by adding an image-sized coefficient memory buffer (not shown in Figure 4) between the quantizer and the entropy encoder. As each block is quantized, its coefficients are stored in the buffer. The DCT coefficients in the buffer are then partially encoded in each of multiple scans. The typical sequence of image presentation at the output of the decoder for sequential vs., progressive modes of operation is shown in Figure 9.

347

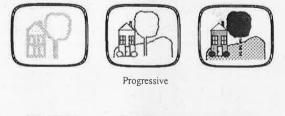




Figure 9 - Progressive vs. sequential presentation

There are two procedures by which the quantized coefficients in the buffer may be partially encoded within a scan. First, only a specified *band* of coefficients from the zig-zag sequence need be encoded. This procedure is called *spectral selection*, because each band typically contains coefficients which occupy a lower or higher part of the *frequency* spectrum for that 8x8 block. Secondly, the coefficients within the current band need not be encoded to their full (quantized) accuracy within each scan. Upon a coefficient's first encoding, a specified number of most significant bits is encoded first. In subsequent scans, the less significant bits are then encoded. This procedure is called *successive approximation*. Either procedure may used separately, or they may be mixed in flexible combinations.

In hierarchical mode, an image is encoded as a sequence of *frames*. These frames provide *reference reconstructed components* which are usually needed for prediction in subsequent frames. Except for the first frame for a given component, *differential frames* encode the difference between source components and reference reconstructed components. The coding of the differences may be done using only DCT-based processes, only lossless processes, or DCT-based processes with a final lossless process for each component. *Downsampling and upsampling filters* may be used to provide a pyramid of spatial resolutions as shown in Figure 10. Alternately, the hierarchical mode can be used to improve the quality of the reconstructed components at a given spatial resolution.



Hierarchical mode offers a progressive presentation similar to the progressive DCT-based mode but is useful in environments which have multi-resolution requirements. Hierarchical mode also offers the capability of progressive transmission to a final lossless stage.

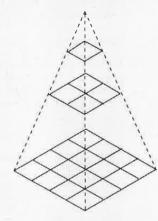


Figure 10 - Hierarchical multi-resolution encoding

3.6 Entropy coding alternatives

348

Two alternative entropy coding procedures are specified: Huffman coding and arithmetic coding. Huffman coding procedures use Huffman tables, determined by one of the table specifications shown in Figures 1 and 2. Arithmetic coding procedures use arithmetic coding conditioning tables, which may also be determined by a table specification. No default values for Huffman tables are specified, so that applications may choose tables appropriate for their own environments. Default tables are defined for the arithmetic coding conditioning.

The baseline sequential process uses Huffman coding, while the extended DCT-based and lossless processes may use either Huffman or arithmetic coding.

3.7 Sample precision

For DCT-based processes, two alternative sample precisions are specified: either 8 bits or 12 bits per sample. Applications which use samples with other precisions can use either 8-bit or 12-bit precision by shifting their source image samples appropriately. The baseline process uses only 8-bit precision. DCT-based implementations which handle 12-bit source image samples are likely to need greater computational resources than those which handle only 8-bit source images. Consequently in this Specification separate normative requirements are defined for 8-bit and 12-bit DCT-based processes.

For lossless processes the sample precision is specified to be from 2 to 16 bits.

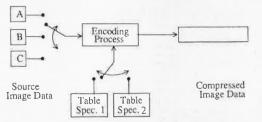
3.8 Multiple-component control

3.3 and 3.4 give an overview of one major part of the encoding and decoding processes - those which operate on the sample values in order to achieve compression. There is another major part as well - the procedures which control the order in which the image data from multiple components are processed to create the compressed data, and which ensure that the proper set of table data is applied to the proper data units in the image. (A data unit is a sample for lossless processes and an 8x8 block of samples for DCT-based processes).

349

3.8.1 Interleaving multiple components

Figure 11 shows an example of how an encoding process selects between multiple source image components as well as multiple sets of table data, when performing its encoding procedures. The source image in this example consists of the three components A, B, and C, and there are two sets of table specifications. (This simplified view does not distinguish between the quantization tables and entropy coding tables).





In sequential mode, encoding is *non-interleaved* if the encoder compresses all image data units in component A before beginning component B, and then in turn all of B before C. Encoding is *interleaved* if the encoder compresses a data unit from A, a data unit from B, a data unit from C, then back to A, etc. These alternatives are illustrated in Figure 12, which shows a case in which all three image components have identical dimensions: X columns by Y rows, for a total of N data units each.

These control procedures are also able to handle cases in which the source image components have different dimensions. Figure 13 shows a case in which two of the components, B and C, have half the number of horizontal samples relative to component A. In this case, two data units from A are interleaved with one each from B and C. Cases in which components of an image have more complex sampling relationships, including subsampling in the vertical dimension, can be handled as well.

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD 350 – X – - X --> X ~ B₁B₂ Y Y В, A B₁,B₂,....B_n, C1,C2,....Cn, A1, A2, Scan 3 Scan 1 Scan 2 Data unit encoding order, non-interleaved $A_1, B_1, C_1, A_2, B_2, C_2, \dots, A_n, B_n, C_n$ Scan 1 Data unit encoding order, interleaved Figure 12 - Interleaved vs. non-interleaved encoding order <--- X/2→ <-- X/2→ - x -A1 A B. B₂ C C. Y Y Y Α, B $A_1, A_2, B_1, C_1, A_3, A_4, B_2, C_2, \dots, A_{n-1}, A_n, B_{n/2}, C_{n/2}$ Scan 1 Data unit encoding order, interleaved Figure 13 - Interleaved order for components with different dimensions 10

Page 53

351

3.8.2 Minimum coded unit

Related to the concepts of multiple-component interleave is the minimum coded unit (MCU). If the compressed image data is non-interleaved, the MCU is defined to be one data unit. For example, in Figure 12 the MCU for the non-interleaved case is a single data unit. If the compressed data is interleaved, the MCU contains one or more data units from each component. For the interleaved case in Figure 12, the (first) MCU consists of the three interleaved data units A_1, B_1, C_1 . In the example of Figure 13, the (first) MCU consists of the four data units A_1, A_2, B_1, C_1 .

3.9 Structure of compressed data

Figures 1, 2, and 3 all illustrate slightly different views of compressed image data. Figure 1 shows this data as the output of an encoding process, Figure 2 shows it as the input to a decoding process, and Figure 3 shows compressed image data in the interchange format, at the interface between applications.

Compressed image data is described by a uniform structure and set of parameters for both classes of encoding processes (lossy or lossless), and for all modes of operation (sequential, progressive, lossless, and hierarchical). The various parts of the compressed image data are identified by special two-byte codes called *markers*. Some markers are followed by particular sequences of parameters such as table specifications and headers. Others are used without parameters for functions such as marking the start-of-image and end-of-image. When a marker is associated with a particular sequence of parameters, the marker and its parameters comprise a *marker segment*.

The data created by the entropy encoder are also segmented, and one particular marker - the *restart marker* - is used to isolate *entropy-coded data segments*. The encoder outputs the restart markers, intermixed with the entropy-coded data, at regular *restart intervals* of the source image data. Restart markers can be identified without having to decode the compressed data to find them. Because they can be independently decoded, they have application-specific uses, such as parallel encoding or decoding, isolation of data corruptions, and semi-random access of entropy-coded segments.

There are three compressed data formats:

- 1) the interchange format;
- 2) the abbreviated format for compressed image data;
- 3) the abbreviated format for table-specification data.

3.9.1 Interchange format

In addition to certain required marker segments and the entropy-coded segments, the interchange format shall include the marker segments for all quantization and entropy-coding table specifications needed by the decoding process. This guarantees that a compressed image can cross the boundary between application environments, regardless of how each environment internally associates tables with compressed image data.

3.9.2 Abbreviated format for compressed image data

The abbreviated format for compressed image data is identical to the interchange format, except that it does not include all tables required for decoding. (It may include some of them.) This format is intended for use within applications where alternative mechanisms are available for supplying some or all of the table-specification data needed for decoding.

3.9.3 Abbreviated format for table-specification data

This format contains only table-specification data. It is a means by which the application may install in the decoder the tables required to subsequently reconstruct one or more images.

3.10 Image, frame, and scan

352

Compressed image data consists of only one image. An image contains only one frame in the cases of sequential and progressive coding processes; an image contains multiple frames for the hierarchical mode.

A frame contains one or more scans. For sequential processes, a scan contains a complete encoding of one or more image components. In Figures 12 and 13, the frame consists of three scans when non-interleaved, and one scan if all three components are interleaved together. The frame could also consist of two scans: one with a non-interleaved component, the other with two components interleaved.

For progressive processes, a scan contains a partial encoding of all data units from one or more image components. Components shall not be interleaved in progressive mode, except for the DC coefficients in the first scan for each component of a progressive frame.

3.11 Summary of Coding Processes

Table 1 provides a summary of the essential characteristics of the distinct coding processes specified in this Specification. The full specification of these processes is contained in Annexes F, G, H and J.

Table 1 - Summary: Essential Characteristics of Coding Processes

353

Baseline Process (required for all DCT-based decoders)			
DCT-based process			

- · Source image: 8-bit samples within each component
- Sequential
- Huffman coding: 2 AC and 2 DC tables
- Decoders shall process scans with 1, 2, 3, and 4 components
- · Interleaved and non-interleaved scans

Extended DCT-based Processes

- DCT-based process
- · Source image: 8-bit or 12-bit samples
- Sequential or progressive
- Huffman or arithmetic coding: 4 AC and 4 DC tables
- Decoders shall process scans with 1, 2, 3, and 4 components
- · Interleaved and non-interleaved scans

Lossless Processes

- · Predictive process (not DCT-based)
- Source image: N-bit samples (2 \leq N \leq 16)
- Sequential
- Huffman or arithmetic coding: 4 DC tables
- · Decoders shall process scans with 1, 2, 3, and 4 components
- · Interleaved and non-interleaved scans

Hierarchical processes

- Multiple frames (non-differential and differential)
- · Uses extended DCT-based or lossless processes
- Decoders shall process scans with 1, 2, 3, and 4 components
- · Interleaved and non-interleaved scans

13

4 Definitions, abbreviations, and symbols

4.1 Definitions and abbreviations

354

For the purposes of this Specification, the following definitions apply.

abbreviated format: A representation of compressed image data which is missing some or all of the table specifications required for decoding.

AC coefficient: Any DCT coefficient for which the frequency is not zero in at least one dimension.

(adaptive) (binary) arithmetic decoding: An entropy decoding procedure which recovers the sequence of symbols from the sequence of bits produced by the arithmetic encoder.

(adaptive) (binary) arithmetic encoding: An entropy encoding procedure which codes by means of a recursive subdivision of the probability of the sequence of symbols coded up to that point.

application environment: The standards for data representation, transmission, and association which have been established for a particular application.

arithmetic decoder: An embodiment of arithmetic decoding procedure.

arithmetic encoder: An embodiment of arithmetic encoding procedure.

baseline (sequential): A particular sequential DCT-based encoding and decoding process specified in this Specification, and which is required for all DCT-based decoding processes.

binary decision: Choice between two alternatives.

bit stream: Partially encoded or decoded sequence of bits comprising an entropy-coded segment.

block-interleaved: The descriptive term applied to the repetitive multiplexing in a specific order of small groups of 8x8 blocks from each component in a scan.

block-row: A sequence of eight contiguous component lines which are partitioned into 8x8 blocks.

byte: Eight-bit octet.

byte stuffing: A procedure in which either the Huffman coder or the arithmetic coder inserts a zero byte into the entropy-coded segment following the generation of an encoded hexadecimal X'FF' byte.

carry bit: A bit in the arithmetic encoder code register which is set if a carry-over in the code register overflows the eight bits reserved for the output byte.

ceiling function: The mathematical procedure in which the greatest integer value of a real number is obtained by selecting the smallest integer value which is greater than or equal to the real number.

class (of coding process): Lossy or lossless coding processes.

code register: The arithmetic encoder register containing the least significant bits of the a partially completed entropy-coded segment. Alternatively, the arithmetic decoder register containing the most significant bits of a partially decoded entropy-coded segment.

p

coding model: A procedure used to convert input data into symbols to be coded. coding process: A general term for referring to an encoding process, a decoding process, or

both.

355

colour image: A continuous-tone image that has more than one component.

columns: Samples per line in a component.

component: One of the two-dimensional arrays which comprise an image.

compressed data: Either compressed image data or table specification data or both.

compressed image data: A coded representation of an image, as specified in this Specification.

compression: Reduction in the number of bits used to represent source image data.

conditional exchange: The interchange of MPS and LPS probability intervals whenever the size of the LPS interval is greater than the size of the MPS interval (in arithmetic coding).

(conditional) probability estimate: The probability value assigned to the LPS by the probability estimation state machine (in arithmetic coding).

conditioning table: The set of parameters which select one of the defined relationships between prior coding decisions and the conditional probability estimates used in arithmetic coding.

context: The set of previously coded binary decisions which is used to create the index to the probability estimation state machine (in arithmetic coding).

continuous-tone image: An image whose components have more than one bit per sample.

data unit: A block in DCT-based processes; a sample in lossless processes.

DC coefficient: The DCT coefficient for which the frequency is zero in both dimensions.

DC prediction: The procedure used by DCT-based encoders whereby the quantized DC coefficient from the previously encoded 8x8 block of the same component is subtracted from the current quantized DC coefficient.

(DCT) coefficient: The amplitude of a specific cosine basis function.

decoder: An embodiment of a decoding process.

decoding process: A process which takes as its input compressed image data and outputs a continuous-tone image.

default conditioning: The values defined for the arithmetic coding conditioning tables at the beginning of coding of an image.

dequantization: The inverse procedure to quantization by which the decoder recovers a representation of the DCT coefficients.

difference image: The two dimensional array of data formed by subtracting a reference image from a source image (in hierarchical mode coding).

differential component: The difference between an input component derived from the source image and the corresponding reference component derived from the preceding frame for that component (in hierarchical mode coding).

differential frame: A frame in a hierarchical process in which differential components are either encoded or decoded.

(digital) reconstructed image (data): A continuous-tone image which is the output of any decoder defined in this Specification.

(digital) source image (data): A continuous-tone image used as input to any encoder defined in this Specification.

(digital) (still) image: A set of two-dimensional arrays of data.

discrete cosine transform; DCT: Either the forward discrete cosine transform or the inverse discrete cosine transform.

downsampling (filter): A procedure by which the spatial resolution of an image is reduced (in hierarchical mode coding).

encoder: An embodiment of an encoding process.

356

encoding process: A process which takes as its input a continuous-tone image and outputs compressed image data.

entropy-cooed (data) segment: An independently decodable sequence of entropy encoded bytes of compressed image data.

(entropy-coded segment) pointer: The variable which points to the most recently placed (or fetched) byte in the entropy encoded segment.

entropy decoder: An embodiment of an entropy decoding procedure.

entropy decoding: A lossless procedure which recovers the sequence of symbols from the sequence of bits produced by the entropy encoder.

entropy encoder: An embodiment of an entropy encoding procedure

entropy encoding: A lossless procedure which converts a sequence of input symbols into a sequence of bits such that the average number of bits per symbol approaches the entropy of the input symbols.

extended (DCT-based) process: A descriptive term for DCT-based encoding and decoding processes in which additional capabilities are added to the baseline sequential process.

forward discrete cosine transform; FDCT: A mathematical transformation using cosine basis functions which converts a block of samples into a corresponding array of basis function amplitudes.

frame: A group of one or more scans (all using the same DCT-based or lossless process) through the data of one or more of the components in an image.

frame header: The start-of-frame marker and frame parameters that are coded at the beginning of a frame.

frequency: A two dimensional index into the two dimensional array of DCT coefficients.

(frequency) band: A contiguous group of coefficients from the zig-zag sequence (in progressive mode coding).

full progression: A process which uses both spectral selection and successive approximation (in progressive mode coding).

16

grayscale image: A continuous-tone image that has only one component.

hierarchical: A mode of operation for coding an image in which the first frame for a given component is followed by frames which code the differences between the source data and the reconstructed data from the previous frame for that component. Resolution changes are allowed between frames.

hierarchical decoder: A sequence of decoder processes in which the first frame for each component is followed by frames which decode an array of differences for each component and adds it to the reconstructed data from the preceding frame for that component.

hierarchical encoder: The mode of operation in which the first frame for each component is followed by frames which encoded the array of differences between the source data and the reconstructed data from the preceding frame for that component.

horizontal sampling factor: The relative number of horizontal data units of a particular component with respect to the number of horizontal data units in the other components.

Huffman decoder: An embodiment of a Huffman decoding procedure

Huffman encoder: An embodiment of a Huffman encoding procedure

Huffman encoding: An entropy encoding procedure which assigns a variable length code to each input symbol.

Huffman table: The set of variable length codes required in a Huffman encoder and Huffman decoder.

image data: Either source image data or reconstructed image data.

interchange format: The representation of compressed image data for exchange between application environments.

interleaved: The descriptive term applied to the repetitive multiplexing of small groups of data units from each component in a scan in a specific order.

inverse discrete cosine transform; IDCT: A mathematical transformation using cosine basis functions which converts an array of basis function amplitudes into a corresponding block of samples.

latent output: Output of the arithmetic encoder which is held, pending resolution of carryover (in arithmetic coding).

less probable symbol; LPS: For a binary decision, the decision value which has the smaller probability.

level shift: A procedure used by DCT-based encoders and decoders whereby each input sample is either converted from an unsigned representation to a two's complement representation or from a two's complement representation to an unsigned representation.

lossless: A descriptive term for encoding and decoding processes and procedures in which the output of the decoding procedure(s) is identical to the input to the encoding procedure(s).

lossless coding: The mode of operation which refers to any one of the coding processes defined in this Specification in which all of the procedures are lossless (see Annex H).

lossy: A descriptive term for encoding and decoding processes which are not lossless.

marker: A two-byte code in which the first byte is hexadecimal FF (X'FF') and the second byte is a value between 1 and hexadecimal FE (X'FE').

)

marker segment: A marker and associated set of parameters.

358

MCU-row: The smallest sequence of MCU which contains at least one row of data units from every component in the scan.

minimum coded unit; MCU: The smallest group of data units that is coded.

modes (of operation): The four main categories of image compression processes defined in this Specification.

more probable symbol; MPS: For a binary decision, the decision value which has the larger probability.

non-differential frame: The first frame for any components in a hierarchical encoder or decoder. The components are encoded or decoded without subtraction from reference components. The term refers also to any frame in modes other than the hierarchical mode.

non-interleaved: The descriptive term applied to the data unit processing sequence when the scan has only one component.

(number of) lines: The number of rows in the component with the largest vertical sampling factor in the image.

parameters: Fixed length integers 4, 8 or 16 bits in length, used in the compressed data formats.

point transform: Scaling of a sample or DCT coefficient.

precision: Number of bits allocated to a particular sample or DCT coefficient.

predictor: A linear combination of previously encoded reconstructed values (in lossless mode coding).

probability estimation state machine: An interlinked table of probability values and indices which is used to estimate the probability of the LPS (in arithmetic coding).

probability interval: The probability of a particular sequence of binary decisions within the ordered set of all possible sequences (in arithmetic coding).

(probability) sub-interval: A portion of a probability interval allocated to either of the two possible binary decision values (in arithmetic coding).

procedure: A set of steps which accomplishes one of the tasks which comprise an encoding or decoding process.

progressive (coding): One of the DCT-based or hierarchical processes defined in this Specification in which each scan typically improves the quality of the reconstructed image.

progressive DCT-based: The mode of operation which refers to any one of the processes defined in Annex G of this Specification.

quantization table: The set of 64 quantization values used to quantize the DCT coefficients.

quantization value: An integer value used in the quantization procedure.

quantize: The act of performing the quantization procedure for a DCT coefficient.

reference (reconstructed) component: Reconstructed component data which is used in a subsequent frame of a hierarchical encoder or decoder process (in hierarchical mode coding).

renormalization: The doubling of the probability interval and the code register value until the probability interval exceeds a fixed minimum value (in arithmetic coding).

restart interval: The integer number of MCUs processed as an independent sequence within a

359

restart marker: The marker that separates two restart intervals in a scan.

run (length): Number of consecutive symbols of the same value.

scan

sample: One element in the two-dimensional array which comprises a component.

sample-interleaved: The descriptive term applied to the repetitive multiplexing of small groups of samples from each component in a scan in a specific order.

scan: A single pass through the data for one or more of the components in an image.

scan header: The start-of-scan marker and scan parameters that are coded at the beginning of a scan

sequential (coding): One of the lossless or DCT-based coding processes defined in this Specification in which each component of the image is encoded within a single scan.

sequential DCT-based: The mode of operation which refers to any one of the processes defined in Annex F of this Specification.

spectral selection: A progressive coding process in which the zig-zag sequence is divided into bands of one or more contiguous coefficients, and each band is coded in one scan.

stack counter: The count of X'FF' bytes which are held, pending resolution of carry-over in the arithmetic encoder.

statistical bin: The storage location where an index is stored which identifies the value of the conditional probability estimate used for a particular arithmetic coding binary decision.

statistical conditioning: The selection, based on prior coding decisions, of one estimate out of a set of conditional probability estimates (in arithmetic coding).

statistical model: The assignment of a particular conditional probability estimate to each of the binary arithmetic coding decisions.

statistics area: The array of statistics bins required for a coding process which uses arithmetic coding.

successive approximation: A progressive coding process in which the coefficients are coded with reduced precision in the first scan, and precision is increased by one bit with each succeeding scan.

table specification data: The coded representation from which the tables used in the encoder and decoder are generated.

transcoder: A procedure for converting compressed image data of one encoder process to compressed image data of another encoder process.

(uniform) quantization: The procedure by which DCT coefficients are linearly scaled in order to achieve compression.

upsampling (filter): A procedure by which the spatial resolution of an image is increased (in hierarchical mode coding).

vertical sampling factor: The relative number of vertical data units of a particular component with respect to the number of vertical data units in the other components in the frame.

zig-zag sequence: A specific sequential ordering of the DCT coefficients from (approximately) lowest spatial frequency to highest.

(8x8) block: An 8x8 array of samples.

3-sample predictor: A linear combination of the three nearest neighbor reconstructed samples to the left and above (in lossless mode coding).

4.2 Symbols

360

The symbols used in this Specification are listed below,

A: probability interval

AC: AC DCT coefficient

AC₁₁: AC coefficient predicted from DC values

Ah: successive approximation bit position, high

Al: successive approximation bit position, low

Ap;: ith 8-bit parameter in APP, segment

APP .: marker reserved for application segments

B: byte of data in entropy-coded segment

B_i: ith statistics bin for coding magnitude bit pattern category

B2: next byte from entropy-coded segment when B=X'FF'

BE: counter for buffered correction bits for Huffman coding in the successive approximation process

BITS: 16 byte list containing number of Huffman codes of each length

BP: pointer to entropy-coded segment

BPST: pointer to byte before start of entropy-coded segment

BR: counter for buffered correction bits for Huffman coding in the successive approximation process

C: value of bit stream in code register

C1: component identifier for frame

C_u: horizontal frequency dependent scaling factor in DCT

C.: vertical frequency dependent scaling factor in DCT

C-low: low order 16 bits of the arithmetic decoder code register

Cm;: ith 8-bit parameter in COM segment

CNT: bit counter in NEXTBYTE

CODE: Huffman code value

CODESIZE(V): code size for symbol V

COM: comment marker

Cs: conditioning table value

Cs_i: component identifier for scan

CT: renormalization shift counter

Cx: high order 16 bits of arithmetic decoder code register

d_{il}: data unit from horizontal position i, vertical position j

D: decision decoded

Da: in DC coding, the DC difference coded for the previous block from the same component; in lossless coding, the difference coded for the sample immediately to the left

361

DAC: define-arithmetic-coding conditioning marker

Db: the difference coded for the sample immediately above

DC: DC DCT coefficient

DC1: DC coefficient for ith block in component

DCk: kth DC value used in prediction of AC coefficients

DHP: define hierarchical progression marker

DHT: define-Huffman-tables marker

DIFF: difference between quantized DC and prediction

DNL: define-number-of-lines marker

DQT: define-quantization-table marker

DRI: define restart interval marker

E: exponent in magnitude category upper bound

ECS: abbreviation for entropy-coded segment

Eh: horizontal expansion parameter in EXP segment

EHUFCO: Huffman code table for encoder

EHUFSI: encoder table of Huffman code sizes

EOB: end-of-block for sequential; end-of-band for progressive

EOB,: run length category for EOB runs

EOBx: position of EOB in previous successive approximation scan

EOI: end-of-image marker

Ev: vertical expansion parameter in EXP segment

EXP: expand reference components

21

D)

FREQ(V): frequency of occurrence of symbol V H: horizontal sampling factor for ith component Hmax: largest horizontal sampling factor HUFFCODE: list of Huffman codes corresponding to lengths in HUFFSIZE HUFFSIZE: list of code lengths HUFFVAL: list of values assigned to each Huffman code i: subscript index I: integer variable Index(S): index to probability estimation state machine table for context index S j: subscript index J: integer variable JPG: marker reserved for JPEG extensions JPG,: marker reserved for JPEG extensions k: subscript index K: integer variable Kmin: index of 1st AC coefficient in band (1 for sequential DCT) Kx: conditioning parameter for AC arithmetic coding model L: DC and lossless coding conditioning lower bound parameter L_i: element in BITS list in DHT segment L_i(t): element in BITS list in the DHT segment for Huffman table t La: length of parameters in APP, segment LASTK: largest value of K Lc: length of parameters in COM segment I.d: length of parameters in DNL segment Le: length of parameters in EXP segment Lf: length of frame header parameters Lh: length of parameters in DHT segment Lp: length of parameters in DAC segment LPS: less probable symbol (in arithmetic coding) Lq: length of parameters in DQT segment Lr: length of parameters in DRI segment Ls: length of scan header parameters

362

LSB: least significant bit

m: modulo 8 counter for RSTm marker

M: bit mask used in coding magnitude of V

MAXCODE: table with maximum value of Huffman code for each code length

MCUR: number of MCU required to make up one row

MINCODE: table with minimum value of Huffman code for each code length

MPS: more probable symbol (in arithmetic coding)

MSB: most significant bit

mt: number of Vii parameters for Huffman table t

M2, M3, M4, ... , M15: designation of context-indices for coding of magnitude bits in the arithmetic coding models

363

n: integer variable

N: data unit counter for MCU coding

Nf: number of components in frame

Nb: number of data units in MCU

Next_Index_MPS: new value of Index(S) after a MPS renormalization

Next Index LPS: new value of Index(S) after a LPS renormalization

NL: number of lines defined in DNL segment

Ns: number of components in scan

OTHERS(V): index to next symbol in chain

P: sample precision

Pq: quantizer precision parameter in DQT segment

Pq(t): quantizer precision parameter in DQT segment for quantization table t

Px: calculated value of sample

PRED: quantized DC coefficient from the most recently coded block of the component

Pt: point transform parameter

Qvu: quantization value for DCT coefficient Svo

Q00: quantizer value for DC coefficient

 Q_{ji} : quantizer value for coefficient AC_{ji}

QAC_a: quantized AC coefficient predicted from DC values

QDCk: kth quantized DC value used in prediction of AC coefficients

Qe: LPS probability estimate

Qe(S): LPS probability estimate for context index S

Qk: kth element of 64 quantization elements in DQT segment

R: length of run of zero amplitude AC coefficients

 \mathbf{R}_{vu} : dequantized DCT coefficient

Ra: reconstructed sample value

Rb: reconstructed sample value

Rc: reconstructed sample value

Rd: rounding in prediction calculation

RES: reserved markers

364

Ri: restart interval in DRI segment

RS: composite value used in Huffman coding of AC coefficients

RST_m: restart marker

RRRR: 4-bit value of run length of zero AC coefficients

r_{vu}: reconstructed image sample

S: context index

s_{ii}: sample from horizontal position i, vertical position j in block

Syn: DCT coefficient at horizontal frequency u, vertical frequency v

sys: reconstructed value from IDCT

SC: context-index for coding of correction bit in successive approximation coding

Se: end of spectral selection band in zigzag sequence

SE: context-index for coding of end-of-block or end-of-band

SI: Huffman code size

SIGN: decoded sense of sign

SIZE: length of a Huffman code

SN: context-index for coding of first magnitude category when V is negative

SOI: start-of-image marker

SOF₀: baseline DCT process frame marker

SOF1: extended sequential DCT frame marker, Huffman coding

SOF2: progressive DCT frame marker, Huffman coding

SOF₃: lossless process frame marker, Huffman coding

SOF5: differential sequential DCT frame marker, Huffman coding

SOF₆: differential progressive DCT frame marker, Huffman coding

365

SOF₇: differential lossless process frame marker, Huffman coding

SOF₉: sequential DCT frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOF₁₀: progressive DCT frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOF11: lossless process frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOF₁₃: differential sequential DCT frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOF₁₄: differential progressive DCT frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOF₁₅: differential lossless process frame marker, arithmetic coding

SOS: start-of-scan marker

 $\ensuremath{\mathbf{SP:}}$ context-index for coding of first magnitude category when V is positive

Sq_{vu}: quantized DCT coefficient

Ss: start of spectral selection band in zigzag sequence

SS: context-index for coding of sign decision

SSSS: 4-bit size catagory of DC difference or AC coefficient amplitude

Switch_MPS: parameter controlling inversion of sense of MPS

Sz: parameter used in coding magnitude of V

S0: context-index for coding of V=0 decision

t: summation index for parameter limits computation

T: temporary variable

Ta: arithmetic conditioning table identifier

Ta_i: AC entropy table selector for jth component in scan

Td_j: DC entropy table selector for jth component in scan

TEM: temporary marker

Tq,: quantization table for ith component in frame

Tq: quantizer table identifier in DQT segment

U: DC and lossless coding conditioning upper bound parameter

V: Symbol or value being either encoded or decoded

Vi: vertical sampling factor for ith component

 V_{II} : jth value for length i in HUFFVAL

V_{max}: largest vertical sampling factor

VALPTR: list of indices for 1st value in HUFFVAL for each code length

V1: symbol value

V2: symbol value

25

S

Vt: temporary variable

366

X: number of samples per line in component with largest horizontal sampling factor value

x_i: number of columns in ith component

X: ith statistics bin for coding magnitude category decision

X1, X2, X3, ..., X15: designation of context-indices for coding of magnitude categories in the arithmetic coding models

XHUFCO: extended Huffman code table

XHUFSI: table of sizes of extended Huffman codes

Y: number of lines in component with largest vertical sampling factor value

y₁: number of rows in ith component

ZRL: value in HUFFVAL assigned to run of 16 zero coefficients

ZZ(k): kth element in zigzag sequence of DCT coefficients

ZZ(0): quantized DC coefficient in zigzag sequence

5 Interchange format requirements

The interchange format is the coded representation of compressed image data for exchange between application environments.

367

The interchange format requirements are that any compressed image data represented in interchange format shall comply with the syntax and codes assignments appropriate for the decoding process selected, as specified in Annex B.

6 Encoder requirements

An encoding process converts source image data to compressed image data. Each of Annexes F, G, H, and J specifies a number of distinct encoding processes for its particular mode of operation.

An encoder is an embodiment of one (or more) of the encoding processes specified in Annexes F. G, H, or J. In order to comply with this Specification, an encoder shall satisfy at least one of the following two requirements.

An encoder shall:

- with proper accuracy, convert source image data to compressed image data which complies with the interchange format syntax specified in Annex B for the encoding process(es) embodied by the encoder.
- 2) with proper accuracy, convert source image data to compressed image data which complies with the abbreviated format syntax for compressed image data specified in Annex B for the encoding process(es) embodied by the encoder.

For each of the encoding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, and J, the compliance tests for the above requirements are specified in Part 2 of this Specification.

28

NOTE - There is no **requirement** in this Specification that any encoder which embodies one of the encoding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, or J shall be able to operate for all ranges of the parameters which are allowed for that process. An encoder is only required to meet the compliance tests specified in Part 2, and to generate the compressed data format according to Annex B for those parameter values which it does use.

369

7 Decoder requirements

A decoding process converts compressed image data to reconstructed image data. Each of Annexes F, G, H, and J specifies a number of distinct decoding processes for its particular mode of operation.

A decoder is an embodiment of one (or more) of the decoding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, or J. In order to comply with this Specification, a decoder shall satisfy all three of the following requirements.

A decoder shall:

- with proper accuracy, convert to reconstructed image data any compressed image data with parameters within the range supported by the application, and which complies with the interchange format syntax specified in Annex B for the decoding process(es) embodied by the decoder;
- accept and properly store any table-specification data which complies with the abbreviated format syntax for table-specification data specified in Annex B for the decoding process(es) embodied by the decoder;
- 3) with proper accuracy, convert to reconstructed image data any compressed image data which complies with the abbreviated format syntax for compressed image data specified in Annex B for the decoding process(es) embodied by the decoder, provided that the tablespecification data required for decoding the compressed image data has previously been installed into the decoder.

Additionally, any DCT-based decoder, if it embodies any DCT-based decoding process other than baseline sequential, shall also embody the baseline sequential decoding process.

For each of the decoding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, and J, the compliance tests for the above requirements are specified in Part 2 of this Specification.

Annex A (normative)

Mathematical definitions

A.1 Source image

Source images to which the encoding processes specified in this Specification can be applied are defined in this annex.

371

A.1.1 Dimensions and relative sampling

As shown in Figure A.1, a source image is defined to consist of Nf components. Each component, with unique identifier C_i , is defined to consist of a rectangular array of samples of x_i columns by y_i rows. The image has overall dimensions X samples horizontally by Y samples vertically, where X is the maximum of the x_i values and Y is the maximum of the y_i values for all components in the frame. For each component, sampling factors H_i and V_i are defined relating component dimensions x_i and y_i to overall image dimensions X and Y, according to the following expressions:

$$x_i = [X \times \frac{H_i}{H_{max}}]$$
 and $y_i = [Y \times \frac{V_i}{V_{max}}]$

where H_{max} and V_{max} are the maximum sampling factors for all components in the frame, and [] is the ceiling function.

As an example, consider an image having 512 pixels by 512 lines and 3 components sampled according to the following sampling factors:

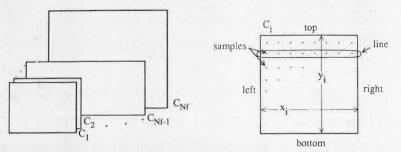
Component 0	$H_0 = 4$, $V_0 = 1$
Component 1	$H_1^0 = 2, V_1^0 = 2$
Component 2	$H_{2}^{1} = 1, V_{2}^{1} = 1$

Then X=512, Y=512, H_{max} =4, V_{max} =2, and x_i and y_i for each component are:

Component 0	$x_0 = 512$,	$y_0 = 256$
Component 1	$x_1 = 256$,	
Component 2	$x_2 = 128$,	

NOTE - The X, Y, H_i, and V_i parameters are contained in the frame header of the interchange format (see B.2.2), whereas the individual component dimensions x_i and y_i are derived by the decoder. Source images with x_i and y_i dimensions which do not satisfy the expressions above cannot be properly reconstructed.

A-1



(a) Source image with multiple components (b) Characteristics of an image component

Figure A.1 - Source image characteristics

A.1.2 Sample precision

A sample is defined to be an integer with precision P bits, with any value in the range $[0,2^{P}-1]$. All samples of all components within the same source image shall have the same precision P. Restrictions on the value of P depend on the mode of operation, as specified in B.2 - B.7.

A.1.3 Data unit

372

A data unit is a sample in lossless processes and an 8x8 block of contiguous samples in DCTbased processes. The left-most 8 samples of each of the top-most 8 rows in the component shall always be the top-left-most block. With this top-left-most block as the reference, the component is partitioned into contiguous data units to the right and to the bottom (as shown in figure A.4).

A.1.4 Orientation

Figure A.1 indicates the orientation of an image component by the terms top, bottom, left, and right. The order by which the data units of an image component are input to the compression encoding procedures is defined to be left-to-right and top-to-bottom within the component. (This ordering is precisely defined in A.2). It is the responsibility of applications to define which edges of a source image shall be considered top, bottom, left, and right.

A.2 Order of source image data encoding

The scan header (see B.2.3) specifies the order by which source image data units shall be encoded and placed within the compressed image data. For a given scan, if the scan header parameter Ns=1, then data from only one source component — the component specified by parameter Cs₁ — shall be present within the scan. This data is non-interleaved by definition. If Ns>1, then data from the Ns components Cs₁ through Cs_{Ns} shall be present within the scan. This data shall always be interleaved. The order of components in a scan shall be according to the order specified in the frame header.



3

The ordering of data units and the construction of minimum coded units (MCU) is defined as follows.

373

A.2.1 Minimum coded unit (MCU)

For non-interleaved data the MCU is one data unit. For interleaved data the MCU is the sequence of data units defined by the sampling factors of the components in the scan.

A.2.2 Non-interleaved order (Ns=1)

When Ns=1 (where Ns is the number of components in a scan), the order of data units within a scan shall be left-to-right and top-to-bottom, as shown in Figure A.2. This ordering applies whenever Ns=1, regardless of the values of H_1 and V_1 .



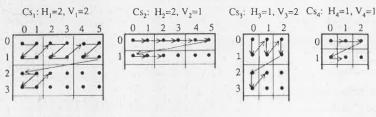
Figure A.2 - Non-interleaved data ordering

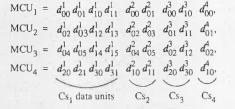
A.2.3 Interleaved order (Ns>1)

When Ns>1, each scan component Cs_i is partitioned into small rectangular arrays of H_k horizontal data units by V_k vertical data units. The subscripts k indicate that H_i and V_k are from the position in the frame header component-specification for which C_k = Cs_i. Within each H_k by V_k array, data units are ordered from left-to-right and top-to-bottom. The arrays in turn are ordered from left-to-right and top-to-bottom within each component.

As shown in the example of Figure A.3, Ns=4, and MCU₁ consists of data units taken first from the top-left-most region of Cs₁, followed by data units from the same array of Cs₂, then from Cs₃ and then from Cs₄. MCU₂ follows the same ordering for data taken from the next region to the right for the four components

A-3







A.2.4 Completion of partial MCU

For DCT-based processes the data unit is a block. If x_i is not a multiple of 8, the encoding process shall extend the number of columns to complete the right-most sample blocks. If the component is to be interleaved, the encoding process shall also extend the number of samples by one or more additional blocks, if necessary, so that the number is an integer multiple of H_i . Similarly, if y_i is not a multiple of 8, the encoding process shall extend the number of rows to complete the bottom-most block-row. If the component is to be interleaved, the encoding process shall also extend the number of rows to that the number is an integer multiple of H_i .

NOTE: It is recommended that any incomplete MCUs be completed by replication of the right-most column and the bottom row of each component.

For lossless processes the data unit is a sample. If the component is to be interleaved, the encoding process shall extend the number of samples, if necessary, so that the number is a multiple of H_i. Similarly, the encoding process shall extend the number of lines, if necessary, so that the number of lines is a multiple of V_i.



374

A.3 DCT compression

A.3.1 Level shift

Before a non-differential frame encoding process computes the FDCT for a block of source image samples, the samples shall be level shifted to a signed representation by subtracting $2^{P,1}$, where P is the precision parameter specified in B.2.2. Thus, when P=8, the level shift is by 128; when P=12, the level shift is by 2048.

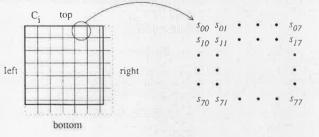
375

After a non-differential frame decoding process computes the IDCT and produces a block of reconstructed image samples, an inverse level shift shall restore the samples to the unsigned representation.

A.3.2 Orientation of samples for FDCT computation

Figure A.4 shows an image component which has been partitioned into 8x8 blocks for the FDCT computations. Figure A.4 also defines the orientation of the samples within a block by showing the indices used in the FDCT equation of A.3.3.

The definitions of block partitioning and sample orientation also apply to any DCT decoding process and the output reconstructed image. Any extended samples added by an encoding process shall be removed by the decoding process.





A.3.3 FDCT and IDCT (informative)

The following equations specify the ideal functional definition of the FDCT and the IDCT.

NOTE - These equations contain terms which cannot be represented with perfect accuracy by any real implementation. The accuracy requirements for the combined FDCT and quantization procedures are specified in Part 2 of this Specification. The accuracy requirements for the combined dequantization and IDCT procedures are also specified in Part 2 of this Specification.



>

FDCT:
$$S_{vu} = \frac{1}{4} C_u C_v \sum_{x=0}^7 \sum_{y=0}^7 s_{yx} \cos \frac{(2x+1)u\pi}{16} \cos \frac{(2y+1)v\pi}{16}$$

IDCT: $s_{yx} = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{u=0}^7 \sum_{v=0}^7 C_u C_v S_{vu} \cos \frac{(2x+1)u\pi}{16} \cos \frac{(2y+1)v\pi}{16}$

376

where:
$$C_{\mu}$$
, $C_{\nu} = 1 / \sqrt{2}$ for $u, \nu = 0$; $C_{\mu}, C_{\nu} = 1$ otherwise

A.3.4 DCT coefficient quantization (informative) and dequantization (normative)

After the FDCT is computed for a block, each of the 64 resulting DCT coefficients is quantized by a uniform quantizer. The quantizer step size for each coefficient S_{eq} is the value of the corresponding element Q_{eq} from the quantization table specified by the frame parameter Tq_i (see B.2.2).

The uniform quantizer is defined by the following equation. Rounding is to the nearest integer:

$$Sq_{\nu\mu} = round\left(\frac{S_{\nu\mu}}{Q_{\nu\mu}}\right)$$

 Sq_{vu} is the quantized DCT coefficient, normalized by the quantizer step size.

NOTE: This equation contains a term which may not be represented with perfect accuracy by any real implementation. The accuracy requirement for the combined FDCT and quantization procedures are specified in part 2 of this Specification.

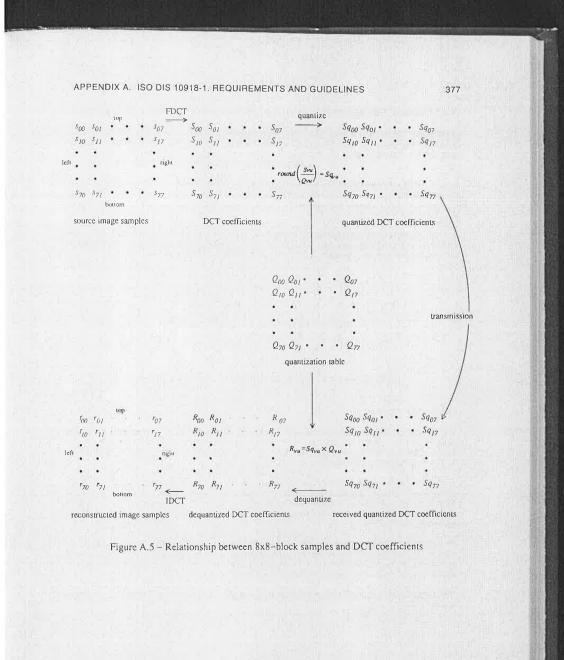
At the decoder, this normalization is removed by the following equation, which defines dequantization:

$$R_{vu} = Sq_{vu} \times Q_{vu}$$

The relationship among samples, DCT coefficients, and quantization is illustrated in Figure A.5.



0



A-7

Ú.

A.3.5 Differential DC encoding

378

After quantization, and in preparation for entropy encoding, the quantized DC coefficient Sq_{00} is treated separately from the 63 quantized AC coefficients. It is differentially encoded according to the following equation:

 $DIFF = DC_i - PRED$

where PRED is the quantized DC value (Sq_{00}) of the preceding block of the same component in the interleave.

A.3.6 Zig-zag sequence

After quantization, and in preparation for entropy encoding, the quantized AC coefficients are converted to the zig-zag sequence. The quantized DC coefficient (coefficient zero in the array) is treated separately, as defined in A.3.5. The zig-zag sequence is specified as follows:

0	1	5	6	14	15	27	28
2	4	7	13	16	26	29	42
3	8	12	17	25	30	41	43
9	11	18	24	31	40	44	53
10	19	23	32	39	45	52	54
20	22	33	38	46	51	55	60
21	34	37	47	50	56	59	61
35	36	48	49	57	58	62	63

Figure A.6 - Zig-zag sequence of quantized DCT coefficients

A.4 Point transform

For various procedures data may be optionally divided by a power of 2 by a point transform prior to coding. There are three processes which require a point transform: lossless coding. lossless differential frame coding in the hierarchical mode, and successive approximation coding in the progressive DCT mode.

In the lossless mode of operation the point transform is applied to the input samples. In the difference coding of the hierarchical mode of operation the point transform is applied to the difference between the input component samples and the reference component samples. In both cases the point transform is an integer divide by 2^{h} , where Pt is the value of the point transform transform. parameter (see B.2.3).

In successive approximation coding the point transform for the AC coefficients is an integer divide by 2^{AI} , where AI is the successive approximation bit position, low (see B.2.3). The point transform for the DC coefficients is an arithmetic-shift-right by AI bits. This is equivalent to dividing by 2^{PI} before the level shift (see A.3.1).

The output of the decoder is rescaled by multiplying 2^{Pt}. An example of the point transform is given in K.10.



A.5 Arithmetic procedures in lossless and hierarchical modes of operation

In the lossless mode of operation predictions are calculated with full precision and without clamping of either overflow or underflow beyond the range of values allowed by the precision of the input. However, the division by two which is part of some of the prediction calculations shall be approximated by an arithmetic-shift-right by one bit.

379

The two's complement differences which are coded in either the lossless mode of operation or the differential frame coding in the hierarchical mode of operation are calculated modulo 65536, thereby restricting the precision of these differences to a maximum of 16 bits. The modulo values are calculated by performing the logical AND operation of the two's complement difference with X'FFFF'. For purposes of coding, the result is still interpreted as a 16 bit two's complement difference. Modulo 65536 arithmetic is also used in the decoder in calculating the output from the sum of the prediction and this two's complement difference.

A-9

0

Annex B (normative)

Compressed data formats

This Annex specifies three compressed data formats:

the interchange format, specified in B.2 and B.3;
 the abbreviated format for compressed image data, specified in B.4;
 the abbreviated format for table-specification data, specified in B.5.

B.1 describes the constituent parts of these formats. The format specifications in B.2 - B.5 give the conventions for symbols and figures used in the format specifications.

381

B.1 General aspects of the compressed data format specifications

Structurally, the compressed data formats consist of an ordered collection of parameters, mark-ers, and entropy-coded data segments. Parameters and markers in turn are often organized into marker segments. Because all of these constituent parts are represented with byte-aligned codes, each compressed data format consists of an ordered sequence of 8-bit bytes. For each byte, a most significant bit (MSB) and a least significant bit (LSB) are defined.

B.1.1 Constituent parts

This section gives a general description of each of the constituent parts of the compressed data format.

B.1.1.1 Parameters

Parameters are integers, with values specific to the encoding process, source image characteris-tics, and other features selectable by the application. Parameters are assigned either 4-bit, 1-byte, or 2-byte codes. Except for certain optional groups of parameters, parameters encode critical information without which the decoding process cannot properly reconstruct the image.

The code assignment for a parameter shall be an unsigned integer of the specified length in bits with the particular value of the parameter.

For parameters which are 2 bytes (16 bits) in length, the most significant byte shall come first in the interchange format's ordered sequence of bytes. Parameters which are 4 bits in length al-ways come in pairs, and the pair shall always be encoded in a single byte. The first 4-bit pa-rameter of the pair shall occupy the most significant 4 bits of the byte. Within any 16, 8 or 4 bit parameter, the MSB shall come first and LSB shall come last.

B.1.1.2 Markers

Markers serve to identify the various structural parts of the compressed data formats. Most markers start marker segments containing a related group of parameters; some markers stand alone. All markers are assigned two-byte codes: an X'FF' byte followed by a byte which is not equal to 0 or X'FF' (see Table B.1). Any marker may optionally be preceded by any number of fill bytes, which are bytes assigned code X'FF'

NOTE - Because of this special code-assignment structure, markers make it possible for a decoder to parse the interchange format and locate its various parts without having to decode other segments of image data.

B.1.1.3 Marker assignments

382

All markers shall be assigned two-byte codes: a X'FF' byte followed by a second byte which is not equal to 0 or X'FF'. The second byte is specified in Table B.1 for each defined marker. An asterisk (*) indicates a marker which stands alone, that is, which is not the start of a marker segment.

Table I	B.1 -	Marker	code	assignment
---------	-------	--------	------	------------

ssignment	Symbol	Description
-----------	--------	-------------

Start Of Frame markers, non-differential Huffman coding:

X'FFC0'	SOF	Baseline DCT
X'FFC1'	SOF,	Extended sequential DCT
X'FFC2'	SOF,	Progressive DCT
X'FFC3'	SOF ₃	Spatial (sequential) lossless

Start Of Frame markers, differential Huffman coding:

X'FFC5'	SOF ₅	Differential sequential DCT
X'FFC6'	SOF ₆	Differential progressive DCT
X'FFC7'	SOF_{7}°	Differential spatial

Start Of Frame markers, non-differential arithmetic coding:

X'FFC8'	JPG	Reserved for JPEG extensions
X'FFC9'	SOF	Extended sequential DCT
X'FFCA'	SOF	Progressive DCT
X'FFCB'	SOF	Spatial (sequential) lossless

Start Of Frame markers, differential arithmetic coding:

X'FFCD'	SOF,	Differential sequential DCT
X'FFCE'	SOF ₁₄ SOF ₁₅	Differential progressive DCT
X'FFCF'	SOF ₁₅	Differential spatial

Huffman table specification:

X'FFC4'	DHT

Arithmetic coding conditioning specification:

X'FFCC' DAC Define arithmetic coding conditioning(s)

Restart interval termination:

'FFD0'-X'FFD7'

RST_m* Restart with modulo 8 count "m".

Define Huffman table(s)

Other markers:

X'FFD8' X'FFD9' X'FFDA' X'FFDC' X'FFDC' X'FFDD' X'FFDF' X'FFEF' X'FFE0'-X'FFEF' X'FFF60'-X'FFFD' X'FFFE'	SOI * EOI * SOS DQT DNL DRI DHP EXP APP "PG" COM	Start of image End of image Start of scan Define quantization table(s) Define number of lines Define restart interval Define hierarchical progression Expand reference component(s) Reserved for application segments Reserved for JPEG extensions Comment
erved markers: X'FF01' X'FF02'-X'FFBF'	TEM * RES	For temporary private use in arithmetic coding Reserved

383

B.1.1.4 Marker segments

Rese

A marker segment consists of a marker followed by a sequence of related parameters. The first parameter in a marker segment is the two-byte length parameter. This length parameter encodes the number of bytes in the marker segment, including the length parameter and excluding the two byte marker. The marker segments identified by the SOF and SOS marker codes are referred to as headers: the frame header and the scan header respectively.

B.1.1.5 Entropy-coded data segments

An entropy-coded data segment contains the output of an entropy-coding procedure. It consists of an integer number of bytes, whether the entropy-coding procedure used is Huffman or arithmetic.

NOTES

1. Making entropy-coded segments an integer number of bytes is achieved as follows: for Huffman coding, 1-bits are used, if necessary, to pad the end of the compressed data to complete the final byte of a segment. For arithmetic coding, byte alignment is achieved in the procedure which terminates the entropy-coded segment.

2. In order to ensure that a marker does not occur within an entropy-coded segment, any X'FF' byte generated by either a Huffman or arithmetic encoder is followed by a "stuffed" zero byte.

B.1.2 Syntax

In B.2 and B.3 the interchange format syntax is specified. For the purposes of this Specification, the syntax specification consists of:

- the required ordering of markers, parameters, and entropy-coded segments;

- identification of optional or conditional constituent parts;
- the name, symbol, and definition of each marker and parameter;
- the allowed values of each parameter;

B-3

ų

- any restrictions on the above which are specific to the various coding processes.

The ordering of constituent parts and the identification of which are optional or conditional is specified by the syntax figures in B.2 and B.3. Names, symbols, definitions, allowed values, and restrictions are specified immediately below each syntax figure.

B.1.3 Conventions for syntax figures

384

The syntax figures in B.2 and B.3 are a part of the interchange format specification. The following conventions, illustrated in Figure B.1, apply to these figures:

- parameter/marker indicator: a thin-lined box encloses either a marker or a single parameter;
 segment indicator: a thick-lined box encloses either a marker segment, an entropy-coded data segment, or combinations of these;
- parameter length indicator: the width of a thin-lined box is proportional to the parameter length (4, 8, or 16 bits, shown as E, B, and D respectively in Figure B.1) of the marker or parameter it encloses; the width of thick-lined boxes is not meaningful;
- optional/conditional indicator: square brackets indicate that a marker or marker segment is only optionally or conditionally present in the compressed image data;
- ordering: in the interchange format a parameter or marker shown in a figure precedes all of those shown to its right, and follows all of those shown to its left;
- entropy-coded data indicator: angled brackets indicate that the quantity enclosed has been entropy encoded.

segment	[optional segment]	[B]	D	EF
---------	-----------------------	-----	---	----

Figure B.1 - Syntax notation conventions

B.1.4 Conventions for symbols, code lengths, and values

Following each syntax figure in B.2 and B.3, the symbol, name, and definition for each marker and parameter shown in the figure are specified. For each parameter, the length and allowed values are also specified in tabular form.

The following conventions apply to symbols for markers and parameters:

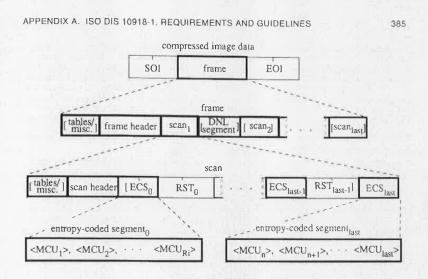
- all marker symbols have three upper-case letters, and some also have a subscript. Examples: SOI, SOF_n ;
- all parameter symbols have one upper-case letter; some also have one lower-case letter and some have subscripts. Examples: Y, Nf, H_p, Tq_p

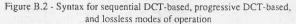
B.2 General sequential and progressive syntax

This section specifies the interchange format syntax which applies to all coding processes for sequential DCT-based, progressive DCT-based, and lossless modes of operation.

B.2.1 High-level syntax

Figure B.2 specifies the order of the high-level constituent parts of the interchange format for all non-hierarchical encoding processes specified in this Specification.





The three markers shown in Figure B.2 are defined as follows:

SOI: start of image marker: marks the start of a compressed image represented in the interchange format.

EOI: end of image marker: marks the end of a compressed image represented in the interchange format.

 RST_{m} : restart marker: an optional marker which is placed between entropy-coded segment only if restart is enabled. There are 8 unique restart markers (m=0-7) which repeat in sequence from 0 to 7 to provide a modulo 8 restart interval count.

The top level of Figure B.2 specifies that the non-hierarchical interchange format shall begin with an SOI marker, shall contain one frame, and shall end with an EOI marker.

The second level of Figure B.2 specifies that a frame shall begin with a frame header and shall contain one or more scans. A frame header may be preceded by one or more table-specification or miscellaneous marker segments. If a DNL segment (see B.2.5) is present, it shall immediately follow the first scan.

For sequential DCT-based and lossless processes each scan shall contain from one to four image components. If two to four components are contained within a scan, they shall be interleaved within the scan. For progressive DCT-based processes each image component is only partially contained within any one scan. Only the first scan(s) for the components (which contain only DC coefficient data) may be interleaved.

B-5

υ

The third level of Figure B.2 specifies that a scan shall begin with a scan header and shall contain one or more entropy-coded data segments. Each scan header may be preceded by one or more table-specification or miscellaneous marker segments. If restart is not enabled, there shall be only one entropy-coded segment (the one labeled "last"), and no restart markers shall be present. If restart is enabled, the number of entropy-coded segments is defined by the size of the image and the defined restart interval. In this case, a restart marker shall follow each entropycoded segment except the last one.

The fourth level of Figure B.2 specifies that each entropy-coded segment is comprised of a se-quence of entropy-coded MCUs. If restart is enabled and the restart interval is defined to be Ri, each entropy-coded segment except the last one shall contain Ri MCUs. The last one shall contain whatever number of MCUs completes the scan.

Figure B.2 specifies the locations where table-specification segments **may** be present. However, this Specification hereby specifies that the interchange format **shall** contain all table-specification data necessary for decoding the compressed image. Consequently, the required table-specification data shall be present at one or more of the allowed locations.

B.2.2 Frame header syntax

Figure B.3 specifies the frame header which shall be present at the start of a frame. This header specifies the source image characteristics (see A.1), the components in the frame, and the sampling factors for each component, and selects the quantization table to be used with each component.

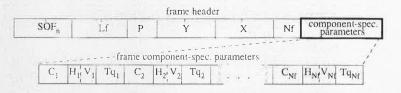


Figure B.3 - Frame header syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.3 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.2. In Table B.2 (and similar tables which follow), value choices are separated by commas (e.g., 8, 12) and inclusive bounds are separated by dashes (e.g., 0 - 3).

 SOF_n : Start of frame marker; marks the beginning of the frame parameters. The subscript n identifies whether the encoding process is baseline sequential, extended sequential, progressive, or lossless, as well as which entropy encoding procedure is used.

 $\begin{array}{l} SOF_0 & \mbox{-} Baseline DCT sequential \\ SOF_1 & \mbox{-} Extended DCT sequential, Huffman coding \\ SOF_2 & \mbox{-} Progressive DCT, Huffman coding \\ SOF_3 & \mbox{-} Lossless (sequential), Huffman coding \\ SOF_9 & \mbox{-} Extended DCT sequential, arithmetic coding \\ SOF_{10} & \mbox{-} Progressive DCT, arithmetic coding \\ SOF_{11} & \mbox{-} Lossless (sequential), arithmetic coding \\ \end{array}$

Lf: frame header length; specifies the length of the frame header shown in Figure B.3 (see B.1.1.4).

387

 P_{\cdot} sample precision; specifies the precision in bits for the samples of the components in the frame.

Y: number of lines; specifies the number of lines in the source image. This shall be equal to the number of lines in the component with the maximum number of vertical samples (see A.1.1). Value 0 indicates that the number of lines shall be defined by the DNL marker and parameters at the end of the first scan (see B.2.5).

X: number of samples per line; specifies the number of samples per line in the source image. This shall be equal to the number of samples per line in the component with the maximum number of horizontal samples (see A.1.1).

Nf: number of image components in frame; specifies the number of source image components in the frame. The value of Nf shall be equal to the number of sets of frame component specification parameters (C_i , H_i , V_j , and Tq_i) present in the frame.

 C_i : component identifier; assigns a unique label to the ith component in the sequence of frame component specification parameters. These values shall be used in the scan headers to identify the components in the scan. The value of C_i shall be different from the values of C_1 through $C_{\nu 1},$

 $\mathbf{H}_i:$ horizontal sampling factor; specifies the number of horizontal data units of component \mathbf{C}_i in each MCU, when more than one component is encoded in a scan.

 V_i : vertical sampling factor; specifies the number of vertical data units of component C_i in each MCU, when more than one component is encoded in a scan.

 Tq_i ; quantization table selector; selects one of four possible quantization tables to use for dequantization of DCT coefficients of component C_i . If the decoding process uses the dequantization procedure, this table shall have been specified by the time the decoder is ready to decode the scan(s) containing component C_i , and shall not be re-specified until all scans containing C_i have been completed.

parameter	size (bits)	seque baseline	Vali ntial DCT extended	progressive DCT	lossless
Lf	16		8 +	$3 \times Nf$	-
Р	8	8	8, 12	8,12	2-16
Y	16		0-6	5535	
Х	16		1-6	55535	
Nf	8	1-255	1-255	1-4	1-255
Ci	8		0-	255	
H	4		1	-4	
Vi	4]	-4	
Tq	8	0-3	0-3	0-3	0

Table B.2 - Frame header parameter sizes and values

B.2.3 Scan header syntax

388

Figure B.4 specifies the scan header which shall be present at the start of a scan. This header specifies which component(s) are contained in the scan, the selection of the entropy coding tables used for each component in the scan, and (for the progressive DCT) which part of the DCT quantized coefficient data is contained in the scan. For lossless processes the scan parameters specify the predictor and the point transform.

NOTE - If there is only one image component present in a scan, that component is, by definition, non-interleaved. If there is more than one image component present in a scan, the components present are, by definition, interleaved.

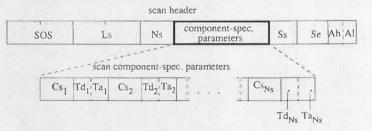


Figure B.4 - Scan header syntax

The marker and parameters shown in Figure B.4 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.3.

389

SOS: start of scan marker; marks the beginning of the scan parameters.

Ls: scan header length; specifies the length of the scan header shown in Figure B.4 (see B.1.1.4).

Ns: number of image components in scan; specifies the number of source image components in the scan. The value of Ns shall be equal to the number of sets of scan component specification parameters $(Cs_j, Td_j, and Ta_j)$ present in the scan.

Cs; scan component selector; selects which of the Nf image components specified in the frame parameters shall be the jth component in the scan. Each Cs_j shall match one of the C_i values specified in the frame header, and the ordering in the scan header shall follow the ordering in the frame header. If Ns>1, the order of interleaved components in the MCU is Cs₁ first, Cs₂ second, etc.. If Ns>1, the following restriction shall be placed on the image components contained in the scan:

$$\sum_{j=1}^{N_S} H_j \times V_j \le 10,$$

where H_j and V_j are the horizontal and vertical sampling factors for scan component j. These sampling factors are specified in the frame header for component i, where i is the frame component specification index for which frame component identifier C_i matches scan component selector Cs_j .

As an example, consider an image having 512 pixels by 512 lines and 3 components sampled according to the following sampling factors:

Component 0	$H_0 = 4$, $V_0 = 1$
Component 1	$H_1^0 = 1, V_1^0 = 2$
Component 2	$H_2 = 2, V_2 = 2$

Then the summation of $H_i \times V_i$ is $(4 \times 1) + (1 \times 2) + (2 \times 2) = 10$.

 Td_i : DC entropy coding table selector; selects one of four possible DC entropy coding tables needed for decoding of the DC coefficients of component Cs_j. The DC entropy table selected shall have been specified (see B.2.4.2) by the time the decoder is ready to decode the current scan. This parameter selects the entropy coding tables for the lossless processes.

 $Ta_{j};$ AC entropy coding table selector; selects one of four possible AC entropy coding tables needed for decoding of the AC coefficients of component Cs_j. The AC entropy table selected shall have been specified (see B.2.4.2) by the time the decoder is ready to decode the current scan. This parameter is zero for the lossless processes.

Ss: start of spectral or predictor selection. In the DCT modes of operation, this parameter specifies the first DCT coefficient in each block which shall be coded in the scan. This parameter shall be set to zero for the sequential DCT processes. In the lossless mode of operations this parameter is used to select the predictor.

Se: end of spectral selection; specifies the last DCT coefficient in each block which shall be coded in the scan. This parameter shall be set to 63 for the sequential DCT processes.

0

In the lossless mode of operations this parameter has no meaning. It shall be set to zero.

Ah: successive approximation bit position high; this parameter specifies the point transform used in the preceding scan (i.e. successive approximation bit position low in the preceding scan) for the band of coefficients specified by Ss and Se. This parameter shall be set to zero for the first scan of each band of coefficients. In the lossless mode of operations this parameter has no meaning. It shall be set to zero.

Al: successive approximation bit position low or point transform, in the DCT modes of operation this parameter specifies the point transform, i.e. bit position low, used before coding the band of coefficients specified by Ss and Se. This parameter shall be set to zero for the sequential DCT processes. In the lossless mode of operations, this parameter specifies the point transform, Pt.

Table B.3 - Scan header parameter sizes and values	Table B.3 -	Scan header i	parameter sizes	and values
--	-------------	---------------	-----------------	------------

parameter	size (bits)	seque baseline	Valu ential DCT extended	progressive DCT	lossless
Ls	16		6 + 2 × Ns		
Ns	8		1-4		
Csj	8	0-255*		1,011	
Tď;	4	0-1	0-3	0-3	0-3
Taj	4	0-1	0-3	0-3	0
Ss	8	0	0	0-63	1-7**
Se	8	63	63	Ss-63***	0
Ah	4	0	0	0-13	0
Al	4	0	0	0-13	0-15

* Cs₁ shall be a member of the set of C₁ specified in the frame header

** 0 for lossless differential frames in the hierarchical mode

*** () if Ss equals zero

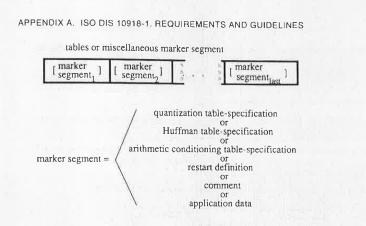
The entropy coding table selectors, Td, and Ta, select either Huffman tables (in frames using Huffman coding) or arithmetic coding tables (in frames using arithmetic coding). In the latter case the entropy coding table selector selects both an arithmetic coding conditioning table and an associated statistics area.

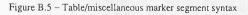
B.2.4 Table-specification and miscellaneous marker segment syntax

Figure B.5 specifies that, at the places indicated in Figure B.2, any of the table-specification segments or miscellaneous marker segments specified in B.2.4.1 - B.2.4.6 may be present in any order and with no limit on the number of segments.

B-10

390





391

If any table specifications occur in the compressed image data, they shall replace any previous specifications, and shall be used whenever the tables are required in the remaining scans in the frame. If a table specification for a given table occurs more than once in the compressed image data, each specification shall replace the previous specification. The quantization table specification shall not be altered between progressive DCT scans of a given component.

B.2.4.1 Quantization table-specification syntax

Figure B.6 specifies the marker segment which defines one or more quantization tables.

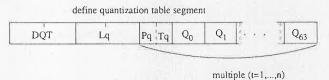


Figure B.6 - Quantization table syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.6 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.4.

DQT: define quantization table marker; marks the beginning of quantization table-specification parameters.



U

Lq: quantization table definition length; specifies the length of all quantization table parameters shown in Figure B.6 (see B.1.1.4).

Pq: quantization table element precision; specifies the precision of the Q_k values. Value 0 indicates 8-bit Q_k values; value 1 indicates 16-bit Q_k values. Pq shall be zero for 8-bit sample precision P (see B.2.2).

Tq: quantization table identifier; specifies one of four possible destinations at the decoder into which the quantization table shall be installed.

 \mathbf{Q}_k : quantization table element, specifies the kth element out of 64 elements, where k is the index in the zig-zag ordering of the DCT coefficients. The quantization elements shall be specified in zig-zag scan order.

parameter	(bits)	seque baseline	Val ential DCT extended	progressive DCT	lossless
Lq	16	n	$65 + 64 \times Pq($	())	undefined
Pq	4	0	0,1	0, 1	undefined
Tq	4	Transfer Street	0-3		undefined
Qk	8,16		1-255, 1-6	5535	undefined

Table B.4 - Quantization table-specification parameter sizes and values

The value n in Table B.4 is the number of quantization tables specified in the DQT marker segment.

Once a quantization table has been defined, it may be used for subsequent images. If a table has never been defined, the results are unpredictable.

An 8 bit DCT-based process shall not use a 16 bit precision quantization table.

B.2.4.2 Huffman table-specification syntax

392

Figure B.7 specifies the marker segment which defines one or more Huffman table specifications.

U

393

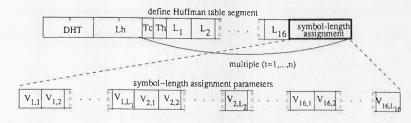


Figure B.7 - Huffman table syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.7 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.5.

DHT: define Huffman table marker, marks the beginning of Huffman table definition parameters.

Lh: Huffman table definition length; specifies the length of all Huffman table parameters shown in Figure B.7 (see B.1.1.4).

Tc: table class; 0=DC table or lossless table; 1=AC table.

Th: Huffman table identifier, specifies one of four possible destinations at the decoder into which the Huffman table shall be installed.

 L_i : number of Huffman codes of length i; specifies the number of Huffman codes for each of the 16 possible lengths allowed by this Specification. L_i 's are the elements of the list BITS.

 $V_{ij};$ value associated with each Huffman code; specifies, for each i, the value associated with each Huffman code of length i. The meaning of each value is determined by the Huffman coding model. The V_{ij} 's are the elements of the list HUFFVAL.

parameter	size (bits)	Values		lues	lossless
	(bits)	baseline	ential DCT extended	progressive DCT	IOSSIESS
Lh	16		$2 + \sum_{t=1}^{n} (17 + $	<i>m</i> ₁)	
Tc	4	Sec. 1.	0,1		0
Th	4	0,1	0	- 3	1
L	8	0 - 255			
Vii	8		0 -	255	N

Table B.5 - Huffman table specification parameter sizes and values

The value n in Table B.5 is the number of Huffman tables specified in the DHT marker segment. The value m_i is the number of parameters which follow the 16 $L_i(t)$ parameters for Huffman table t, and is given by:

$$m_t = \sum_{i=1}^{16} L_i(t)$$

In general, m, is different for each table.

394

Once a Huffman table has been defined, it may be used for subsequent images. If a table has never been defined, the results are unpredictable.

B.2.4.3 Arithmetic conditioning table-specification syntax

Figure B.8 specifies the marker segment which defines one or more arithmetic coding conditioning table specifications. These replace the default arithmetic coding conditioning tables established by the SOI marker.

define arithmetic conditioning segment

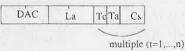


Figure B.8 - Arithmetic conditioning table-specification syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.8 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.6.

DAC: define arithmetic coding conditioning marker; marks the beginning of the definition of arithmetic coding conditioning parameters.

395

La: arithmetic coding conditioning definition length; specifies the length of all arithmetic coding conditioning parameters shown in Figure B.8 (see B.1.1.4).

Tc: table class; 0 = DC table or lossless table, 1 = AC table.

Ta: arithmetic coding conditioning table identifier, specifies one of four possible destinations at the decoder into which the arithmetic coding conditioning table shall be installed.

Cs: conditioning table value; value in either the AC or the DC (and lossless) conditioning table. A single value of Cs shall follow each value of Ta. For AC conditioning tables Tc shall be one and Cs shall contain a value of Kx in the range $1 \le Kx \le 63$. For DC (and lossless) conditioning tables Tc shall be zero and Cs shall contain two 4-bit parameters, U and L. U and L shall be in the range $0 \le L \le U \le 15$ and the value of Cs shall be $L + 16 \times U$.

Table B.6 - Arithmetic coding conditioning table-specification parameter sizes and values

parameter	size	Values				
(bits)		sequential DCT pr baseline extended		progressive DCT	lossless	
La	16	undefined	2 + 2 × n			
Tc	4	undefined	0,1		0	
Та	4	undefined		0 - 3		
Cs	8	undefined	0-255 (Tc=0)	, 1-63 (Tc=1)	0-255	

The value n in Table B.6 is the number of arithmetic coding conditioning tables specified in the DAC marker segment. The parameters L and U are the lower and upper conditioning bounds used in the arithmetic coding procedures defined for DC coefficient coding and lossless coding. The separate value range 1-63 listed for DCT coding is the Kx, conditioning used in AC coefficient coding.

B-15

υ

B.2.4.4 Restart interval definition syntax

396

Figure B.9 specifies the marker segment which defines the restart interval.

define	restart	interval	segment
DRI	Lr		Ri

Figure B.9 - Restart interval definition syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.9 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.7.

DRI: define restart interval marker; marks the beginning of the parameters which define the restart interval.

Lr: define restart interval segment length; specifies the length of the parameters in the DRI segment shown in Figure B.9 (see B.1.1.4).

Ri: restart interval; specifies the number of MCU in the restart interval.

Table B.7 - Define restart interval segment parameter sizes and values

parameter	size (bits)	sequential DCT values progres baseline extended DCT		progressive DCT	lossless
Lr	16	4			
Ri	16	0-65535		1	n × MCUR

In Table B.7 the value n is the number of rows of MCU in the restart interval. The value MCUR is the number of MCU required to make up one row of samples of each component in the scan. The SOI marker disables the restart intervals. A DRI marker segment with Ri nonzero shall be present to enable restart interval processing for the following scans. A DRI marker segment with Ri equal to zero shall disable restart intervals for the following scans.

B.2.4.5 Comment syntax

U

Figure B.10 specifies the marker segment structure for a comment segment.

	comment	segment
СОМ	Lc	Cm ₁ Cm _{Lc-2}

Figure B.10 - Comment segment syntax

397

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.10 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.8.

COM: comment marker; marks the beginning of a comment.

Lc: comment segment length; specifies the length of the comment segment shown in Figure B.10 (see B.1.1.4).

Cm1: comment byte; the interpretation is left to the application.

parameter	size		lues	
	(bits)	sequential DCT baseline extended	DCT	lossless
Lc	16	2	-65535	
Cm;	8	0-255		

Table B.8 - Comment segment parameter sizes and values

B.2.4.6 Application data syntax

Figure B.11 specifies the marker segment structure for an application data segment.

A	pplication d	ata segment
APP _n	Lp	AP ₁ AP _{Lp-2}

Figure B.11 - Application data syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.11 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.9.

APPn: application data marker; marks the beginning of an application data segment.

Lp: application data segment length; specifies the length of the application data segment shown in Figure B.11 (see B.1.1.4).

Ap;: application data byte; any 8-bit value.



398

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

parameter	(bits)	sequent baseline	tial DCT extended	progressive DCT	lossless
Lp	16		2-0	55535	
Ap,	8	0-255			

Table B.9 - Application data segment parameter sizes and values

The APPn (Application) segments are reserved for application use. Since these segments may be defined differently for different applications, they should be removed when the data are exchanged between application environments.

B.2.5 Define number of lines syntax

Figure B.12 specifies the marker segment for defining the number of lines. The DNL (Define Number of Lines) segment provides a mechanism for defining or redefining the number of lines in the frame (the Y parameter in the frame header) at the end of the first scan. The value specified shall be consistent with the number of MCU-rows encoded in the first scan. This segment, if used, shall only occur at the end of the first scan, and only after coding of an integer number of MCU rows.

Define number of lines segment				
DNL	Ld	NL		

Figure B.12 - Define number of lines syntax

The markers and parameters shown in Figure B.12 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.10.

DNL: define number of lines marker, marks the beginning of the define number of lines segment.

Ld: define number of lines segment length; specifies the length of the define number of lines segment shown in Figure B.12 (see B.1.1.4).

NL: number of lines; specifies the number of lines in the frame (see definition of Y in B.2.2).

399

Table B.10 - Define number of lines segment parameter sizes and values

parameter	size (bits)	Values				
	(bits)	seque baseline	ntial DCT extended	DCT	lossless	
Ld	16			4		
NL	16	1-65535*				

* The value specified shall be consistent with the number of lines coded at the point where the DNL segment terminates the compressed data segment.

B.3 Hierarchical syntax

B.3.1 High level hierarchical mode syntax

Figure B.13 specifies the order of the high level constituent parts of the interchange format for hierarchical encoding processes.

		compressed	l image da	ta		
SOI	[tables/misc]	DHP segment	frame ₁	l e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	frame _{last}	EOI

Figure B.13 - Syntax for the hierarchical mode of operation

The hierarchical mode normally uses a sequence of frames including differential frames, and needs two additional markers, DHP and EXP. Frame structure is identical to the frame in non-hierarchical mode.

The non-differential frames in the hierarchical sequence shall use one of the coding processes specified for SOF markers SOF_0 , SOF_1 , SOF_2 , SOF_3 , SOF_6 , SOF_{10} , and SOF_{11} . The differential frames shall use one of the processes specified for SOF_5 , SOF_6 , SOF_7 , SOF_{13} , SOF_{14} , and SOF_{15} .

If the non-differential frames use DCT-based processes, all differential frames except the final frame shall use DCT-based processes. The final differential frames for a component may use a spatial process.

If the non-differential frames use spatial processes, all differential frames shall use a spatial process.

B.3.2 DHP segment syntax

The DHP segment defines the image components, size and sampling factors for the completed hierarchical sequence of frames. The DHP segment shall precede the first frame; a single DHP

B-19

υ

segment shall occur in the compressed image data.

The DHP segment structure is identical to the frame header syntax, except that the DHP marker is used instead of the SOF_n marker. The figures and description of B.2.2 then apply, except that the quantization table selector parameter shall be set to zero in the DHP segment.

B.3.3 EXP segment syntax

Figure B.14 specifies the marker segment structure for the EXP segment. The EXP segment shall be present if (and only if) expansion of the reference components is required either horizontally or vertically. The EXP segment parameters apply only to the next frame (which shall be a differential frame) in the image. If required, the EXP segment shall be one of the table-specification segments or miscellaneous marker segments preceding the frame header, the EXP segment shall not be one of the table specification segments or miscellaneous segments preceding a scan header.

expand :	segmen
----------	--------

FXP	le	EhlE
LAI	LA	LUL L

Figure B.14 - Syntax of the expand segment

The parameters shown in Figure B.14 are defined below. The size and allowed values of each parameter are given in Table B.11.

EXP: expand reference components marker: marks the beginning of the expand reference components segment.

Le: EXP segment length; specifies the length of the EXP segment (see B.1.1.4).

Eh: expand horizontally; if one, the reference components shall be expanded horizontally by a factor of two. If horizontal expansion is not required, the value shall be zero.

Ev: expand vertically; if one, the reference components shall be expanded vertically by a factor of two. If vertical expansion is not required, the value shall be zero.

Table B.11 - Expand segment parameter sizes and values

parameter	size (bits)	Values sequential DCT prog baseline extended DC	ressive lossless
Le	16	3	
Eh	4	0,1	
Ev	4	0,1	

Both Eh and Ev shall be one if expansion is required both horizontally and vertically.

B.4 Abbreviated format for compressed image data

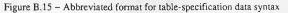
Figure B.2 shows the high-level constituent parts of the interchange format. This format includes all table specifications required for decoding. If an application environment provides methods for table specification other than by means of the compressed image data, some or all of the table specifications may be omitted. Compressed image data which is missing any table specification data required for decoding has the abbreviated format.

401

B.5 Abbreviated format for table-specification data

Figure B.2 shows the high-level constituent parts of the interchange format. If no frames are present in the compressed image data, the only purpose of the compressed image data is to convey table specifications or miscellaneous marker segments defined in B.2.4.1, B.2.4.2, B.2.4.5 and B.2.4.6. In this case the compressed image data has the abbreviated format for table specification data.





B.6 Summary

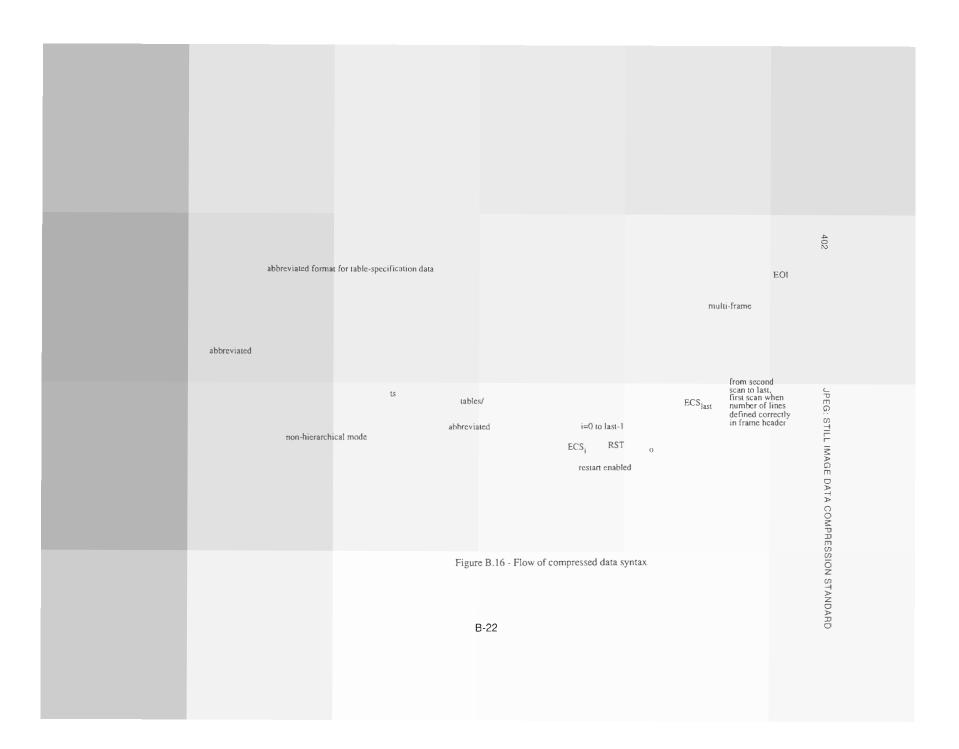
scan header.

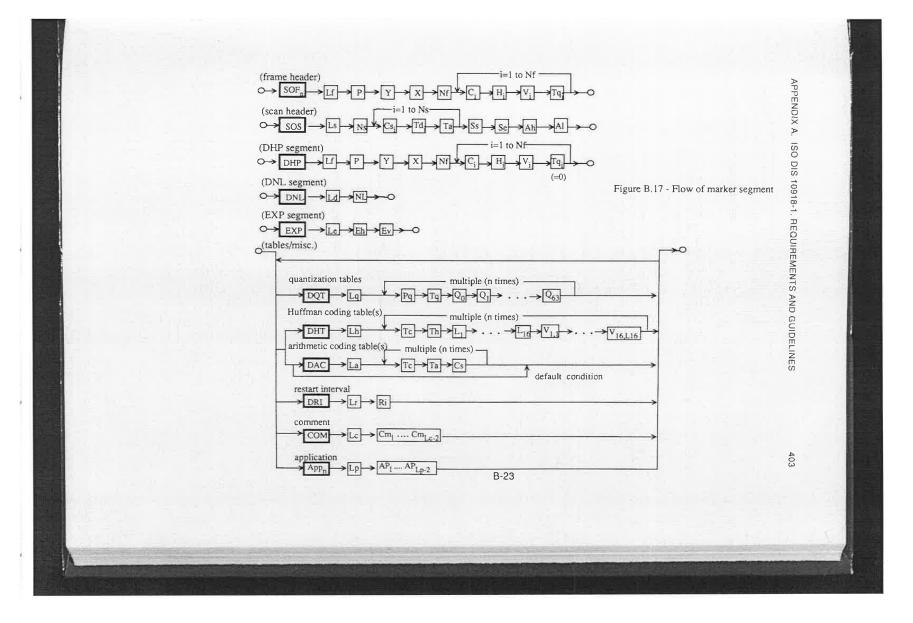
The order of the constituent parts of interchange format and all marker segment structures is summarized in Figures B.16 and B.17. Note that in Figure B.16 double-lined boxes enclose marker segments. In Figures B.16 and B.17 thick-lined boxes encloses only markers. The EXP segment can be mixed with the other table/misc. marker segments preceding the frame header but not with the table/misc. marker segments preceding the DHP segment or the

B-21

Q.

D





C

Annex C (normative)

Huffman table specification

A Huffman coding procedure may be used for entropy coding in any of the coding processes. Coding models for Huffman encoding are defined in Annexes F, G, and H. In this Annex, the Huffman table specification is defined.

405

Huffman tables are specified in the interchange format in terms of a 16-byte list (BITS) giving the number of codes for each code length from 1 to 16. This is followed by a list of the 8-bit symbol values (HUFFVAL), each of which is assigned a Huffman code. The symbol values are placed in the list in order of increasing code length. Code lengths greater than 16 bits are not allowed. In addition, the codes shall be generated such that the all-1-bits code word of any length is reserved as a prefix for longer code words.

NOTE: The order of the symbol values within HUFFVAL is determined only by code length. Within a given code length the ordering of the symbol values is arbitrary.

This annex specifies the procedure by which the Huffman table (of Huffman code words and their corresponding 8-bit symbol values) are derived from the two lists (BITS and HUFFVAL) in the interchange format. However, the way in which these lists are generated is not specified. The lists should be generated in a manner which is consistent with the rules for Huffman coding, and it shall observe the constraints discussed in the previous paragraph. Annex K contains an example of a procedure for generating lists of Huffman code lengths and values which are in accord with these rules.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

C.1 Marker segments for Huffman table specification

The DHT marker identifies the start of Huffman table definitions within the compressed image data. B.2.4.2 specifies the syntax for Huffman table specification.

C.2 Conversion of Huffman tables specified in interchange format to tables of codes and code lengths

Given a list BITS (1..16) containing the number of codes of each size, and a list HUFFVAL containing the symbol values to be associated with those codes as described above, two tables are generated. The HUFFSIZE table contains a list of code lengths; the HUFFCODE table contains the Huffman codes corresponding to those lengths.



J.

406

)

0

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

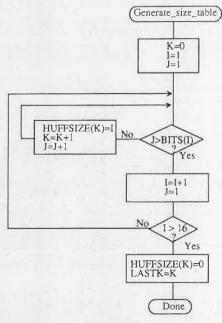
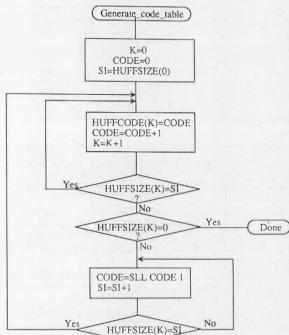


Figure C.1 - Generation of table of Huffman code sizes

Note that the variable LASTK is set to the index of the last entry in the table.

A Huffman code table, HUFFCODE, containing a code for each size in HUFFSIZE is generated by the procedure in figure C.2. The notation "SLL CODE 1" in this figure indicates a shift-left-logical of CODE by one bit position.

C- 2



407

Figure C.2 - Generation of table of Huffman codes

Two tables, HUFFCODE, and HUFFSIZE, have now been initialized. The entries in the tables are ordered according to increasing Huffman code numeric value and length.

The encoding procedure code tables, EHUFCO and EHUFSI, are created by reordering the codes specified by HUFFCODE and HUFFSIZE according to the symbol values assigned to each code in HUFFVAL.

Figure C.3 illustrates this ordering procedure.



Q

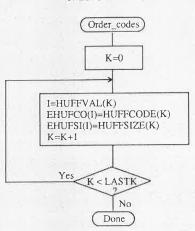


Figure C.3 - Ordering procedure for encoding procedure code tables

C.3 Bit ordering within bytes

408

The root of a Huffman code is place toward the MSB (most-significant-bit) of the byte, and successive bits are placed in the direction MSB to LSB (least-significant-bit) of the byte. Remaining bits, if any, go into the next byte following the same rules.

Integers associated with Huffman codes are appended with the MSB adjacent to the LSB of the preceding Huffman code.

C-4

Annex D (normative)

Arithmetic coding

An adaptive binary arithmetic coding procedure may be used for entropy coding in any of the coding processes except the baseline sequential process. Coding models for adaptive binary arithmetic coding are defined in Annexes F, G, and H. In this Annex the arithmetic encoding and decoding procedures used in those models are defined.

In K.4 a simple test example is given which should be helpful in determining if a given implementation is correct.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

D.1 Arithmetic encoding procedures

Four arithmetic encoding procedures are required in a system with arithmetic coding. They are:

Table D.1. Procedures for binary arithmetic encoding

Procedure	Purpose
Code_0(S)	Code a "0" binary decision with context-index S
Code_1(S)	Code a "1" binary decision with context-index S
Initenc	Initialize the encoder
Flush	Terminate entropy-coded segment

The "Code_0(S)" and "Code_1(S)" procedures code the 0-decision and 1-decision respectively; S is a context-index which identifies a particular conditional probability estimate used in coding the binary decision. The "Initenc" procedure initializes the arithmetic coding entropy encoder. The "Flush" procedure terminates the entropy-coded segment in preparation for the marker which follows.

D.1.1 Binary arithmetic encoding principles

The arithmetic coder encodes a series of binary symbols, zeros and ones, each symbol representing one possible result of a binary decision.

Each "binary decision" provides a choice between two alternatives. The binary decision might be between positive and negative signs, a magnitude being zero or nonzero, or a particular bit in a sequence of binary digits being zero or one.

The output bit stream (entropy-coded data segment) represents a binary fraction which increases in precision as bytes are appended by the encoding process.

D-1

К.,

D.1.1.1 Recursive interval subdivision

Recursive probability interval subdivision is the basis for the binary arithmetic encoding procedures. With each binary decision the current probability interval is subdivided into two subintervals, and the bit stream is modified (if necessary) so that it points to the base (the lower bound) of the probability sub-interval assigned to the symbol which occurred.

In the partitioning of the current probability interval into two sub-intervals, the subinterval for the less probable symbol (LPS) and the sub-interval for the more probable symbol (MPS) are ordered such that usually the MPS sub-interval is closer to zero. Therefore, when the LPS is coded, the MPS sub-interval size is added to the bit stream. This coding convention requires that symbols be recognized as either MPS or LPS rather than 0 or 1. Consequently, the size of the LPS sub-interval and the sense of the MPS for each decision must be known in order to encode that decision.

The subdivision of the current probability interval would ideally require a multiplication of the interval by the probability estimate for the LPS. Because this subdivision is done approximately, it is possible for the LPS sub-interval to be larger than the MPS sub-interval. When that happens a "conditional exchange" interchanges the assignment of the sub-intervals such that the MPS is given the larger sub-interval.

Since the encoding procedure involves addition of binary fractions rather than concatenation of integer code words, the more probable binary decisions can sometimes be coded at a cost of much less than one bit per decision.

D.1.1.2 Conditioning of probability estimates

An adaptive binary arithmetic coder requires a statistical model - a model for selecting conditional probability estimates to be used in the coding of each binary decision. When a given binary decision probability estimate is dependent on a particular feature or features (the context) already coded, it is "conditioned" on that feature. The conditioning of probability estimates on previously coded decisions must be identical in encoder and decoder, and therefore can use only information known to both.

Each conditional probability estimate required by the statistical model is kept in a separate storage location or "bin" identified by a unique context-index S. The arithmetic coder is adaptive, which means that the probability estimates at each context-index are developed and maintained by the arithmetic coding system on the basis of prior coding decisions for that context-index.

D.1.2 Encoding conventions and approximations

The encoding procedures use fixed precision integer arithmetic and an integer representation of fractional values in which X'8000' can be regarded as the decimal value 0.75. The probability interval, A, is kept in the integer range X'8000 <= A < X'10000' by doubling it whenever its integer value falls below X'8000'. This is equivalent to keeping A in the decimal range 0.75 <= A < 1.5. This doubling procedure is called renormalization.

The code register, C, contains the trailing bits of the bit stream. C is also doubled each time A is doubled. Periodically - to keep C from overflowing - a byte of data is removed from the high order bits of the C-register and placed in the entropy-coded segment.

Carry-over into the entropy-coded segment is limited by delaying X'FF' output bytes until the carry-over is resolved. Zero bytes are stuffed after each X'FF' byte in the entropy-coded segment in order to avoid the accidental generation of markers in the entropy-coded segment.

D-2

Keeping A in the range 0.75 <= A < 1.5 allows a simple arithmetic approximation to be used in the probability interval subdivision. Normally, if the current estimate of the LPS probability for context-index S is Qe(S), precise calculation of the sub-intervals would require:

411

Qe(S)×A	= probability sub-interval for the LPS
$A-(Qe(S) \times A)$	= probability sub-interval for the MPS

Because the decimal value of A is of order unity, these can be approximated by

Qe(S)	= probability sub-interval for the LPS	
A-Qe(S)	= probability sub-interval for the MPS	

Whenever the LPS is coded, the value of A-Qe(S) is added to the code register and the probability interval is reduced to Qe(S). Whenever the MPS is coded, the code register is left unchanged and the interval is reduced to A-Qe(S). The precision range required for A is then restored, if necessary, by renormalization of both A and C.

With the procedure described above, the approximations in the probability interval subdivision process can sometimes make the LPS sub-interval larger than the MPS sub-interval. If, for example, the value of Qe(S) is 0.5 and A is at the minimum allowed value of 0.75, the approximate scaling gives one third of the probability interval to the MPS and two thirds to the LPS. To avoid this size inversion, conditional exchange is used. The probability interval is subdivided using the simple approximation, but the MPS and LPS sub-interval assignments are exchanged whenever the LPS sub-interval is larger than the MPS sub-interval. This MPS/LPS conditional exchange can only occur when a renormalization will be needed.

Each binary decision uses a context. A context is the set of prior coding decisions which determine the context-index, S, identifying the probability estimate used in coding the decision.

Whenever a renormalization occurs, a probability estimation procedure is invoked which determines a new probability estimate for the context currently being coded. No explicit symbol counts are needed for the estimation. The relative probabilities of renormalization after coding of LPS and MPS provide, by means of a table-based probability estimation state machine, a direct estimate of the probabilities.

D.1.3 Encoder code register conventions

The flow charts in this annex assume the following register structures for the encoder:

	MSB			LSB
C-register	0000cbbb,	bbbbbsss,	xxxxxxxx,	XXXXXXXX
A-register	00000000,	00000000,	aaaaaaaa,	aaaaaaaa

The "a" bits are the fractional bits in the A-register (the current probability interval value) and the "x" bits are the fractional bits in the code register. The "s" bits are optional spacer bits which provide useful constraints on carry-over, and the "b" bits indicate the bit positions from which the completed bytes of data are removed from the C-register. The "c" bit is a carry bit. Except at the time of initialization, bit 15 of the A-register is always set and bit 16 is always clear (the LSB is bit 0).

Û

These register conventions illustrate one possible implementation. However, any register conventions which allow resolution of carry-over in the encoder and which produce the same entropy-coded segment may be used. The handling of carry-over and the byte stuffing following X'FF' will be described in a later part of this section.

D.1.4 Code_1(S) and Code_0(S) procedures

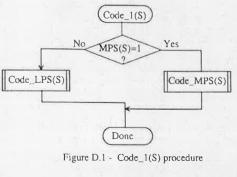
When a given binary decision is coded, one of two possibilities occurs - either a 1-decision or a 0-decision is coded. Code_1(S) and Code_0(S) are shown in Figures D.1 and D.2. The Code_1(S) and Code_0(S) procedures use probability estimates with a context-index S. The context-index S is determined by the statistical model and is, in general, a function of the previous coding decisions; each value of S identifies a particular conditional probability estimate which is used in encoding the binary decision.

The context-index S selects a storage location which contains Index(S), an index to the tables which make up the probability estimation state machine. When coding a binary decision, the symbol being coded is either the more probable symbol or the less probable symbol. Therefore, additional information is stored at each context-index identifying the sense of the more probable symbol, MPS(S).

For simplicity, the flow charts in this section assume that the context storage for each contextindex S has an additional storage field for Qe(S) containing the value of Qe(Index(S)). If only the value of Index(S) and MPS(S) are stored, all references to Qe(S) should be replaced by Qe(Index(S)).

D-4





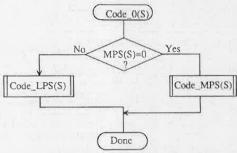


Figure D.2 - Code_0(S) procedure

The Code_LPS(S) procedure normally consists of the addition of the MPS sub-interval A-Qe(S) to the bit stream and a scaling of the interval to the sub-interval, Qe(S). It is always followed by the procedures for obtaining a new LPS probability estimate (Estimate_Qe(S)_after_LPS), and renormalization (Renorm_e).

However, in the event that the LPS sub-interval is larger than the MPS sub-interval, the conditional MPS/LPS exchange occurs and the MPS sub-interval is coded.

D-5

υ

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

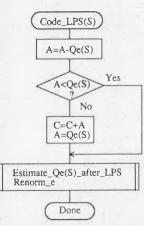


Figure D.3 - Code_LPS(S) procedure with conditional MPS/LPS exchange

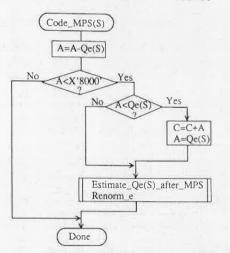
The Code_MPS(S) procedure normally reduces the size of the probability interval to the MPS sub-interval. However, if the LPS sub-interval is larger than the MPS sub-interval, the conditional exchange occurs and the LPS sub-interval is coded instead. Note that conditional exchange cannot occur unless the procedures for obtaining a new LPS probability estimate (Estimate_Qe(S)_after_MPS) and renormalization (Renorm_e) are required after the coding of the symbol

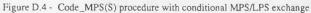


D-6

υ







D.1.5 Probability estimation in the encoder

D.1.5.1 Probability estimation state machine

The probability estimation state machine consists of a number of sequences of probability estimates. These sequences are interlinked in a manner which provides probability estimates based on approximate symbol counts derived from the arithmetic coder renormalization. Some of these sequences are used during the initial "learning" stages of probability estimation; the rest are used for "steady state" estimation.

Each entry in the probability estimation state machine is assigned an index, and each index has associated with it a Qe value and two Next_Index values. The Next_Index_MPS gives the index to the new probability estimate after an MPS renormalization; the Next_Index_LPS gives the index to the new probability estimate after an LPS renormalization. Note that both the index to the estimation state machine and the sense of the MPS are kept for each context-index S. The sense of the MPS is changed whenever the entry in the Switch_MPS is one.

The probability estimation state machine is given in Table D.2. Initialization of the arithmetic coder is always with an MPS sense of zero and a Qe index of zero in Table D.2.

The Qe values listed in Table D.2 are expressed as hexadecimal integers. To convert the 15 bit integer representation of Qe to a decimal probability, divide the Qe values by (4/3)×(X'8000').



U

Table D.2 Qe values and probability estimation state machine

416

Index	Qe			Switch	Index	Qe		Index	Switch
	Value	_LPS	_MPS	_MPS		_Value	_LPS	_MPS	_MPS
Ŋ	X'5A1D'	1	1	1	57	X'01A4'	55	58	0
1	X'2586'	14	2	0	58	X'0160'	56	59	0
2	X'1114'	16	3	0	59	X'0125'	57	60	0
3	X'080B'	18	4	0	60	X'00F6'	58	61	0
4	X'03D8'	20	5	0	61	X'00CB'	59	62	0
5	X'01DA'	23	6	0	62	X'00AB'	61	63	0
6	X'00E5'	25	7	0	63	X'008F'	61	32	0
7	X'006F'	28	8	0	64	X'5B12'	65	65	1
8	X'0036'	30	9	0	65	X'4D04'	80	66	0
9	X'001A'	33	10	0	66	X'412C'	81	67	0
10	X'000D'	35	11	0	67	X'37D8'	82	68	0
11	X'0006'	9	12	0	68	X'2FE8'	83	69	0
12	X'0003'	10	13	0	69	X'293C'	84	70	0
13	X'0001'	12	13	0	70	X'2379'	86	71	0
14	X'5A7F'	15	15	-1	71	X'1EDF'	87	72	0
15	X'3F25'	36	16	0	72	X'1AA9'	87	73	0
16	X'2CF2'	38	17	0	73	X'174E'	72	74	0
17	X'207C'	39	18	0	74	X'1424'	72	75	0
18	X'17B9'	40	19	0	75	X'119C'	74	76	0
19	X'1182'	42	20	0	76	X'0F6B'	74	77	0
20	X'0CEF'	43	21	0	77	X'0D51'	75	78	0
21	X'09A1'	45	22	0	78	X'0BB6'	77	79	0
22	X'072F'	46	23	0	79	X'0A40'	77	48	0
23	X'055C'	48	24	0	80	X'5832'	80	81	1
24	X'0406'	49	25	0	81	X'4D1C	88	82	0
25	X'0303'	51	26	0	82	X'438E'	89	83	0
26	X'()24()'	52	27	0	83	X'3BDD'	90	84	0
27	X'01B1'	54	28	0	84	X'34EE'	-91	85	0
28	X'0144'	56	29	0	85	X'2EAE'	92	86	0
29	X'00F5'	57	30	0	86	X'299A'	93	87	0
30	X'00B7'	59	31	0	87	X'2516'	86	71	0
31	X'008A'	60	32	0	88	X'5570'	88	89	1
32	X'0068'	62	33	0	89	X'4CA9'	95	90	0
33	X'004E'	63	34	0	90	X'44D9'	96	91	0
34	X'003B'	32	35	0	91	X'3E22'	97	92	0
35	X'002C'	33	9	0	92	X'3824'	99	93	0
36	X'5AE1'	37	37	1	93	X'32B4'	99	94	0
37	X'484C'	64	38	0	94	X'2E17'	93	86	0
38	X'3A0D'	65	39	0	95	X'56A8'	95	96	1
39	X'2EF1'	67	40	0	96	X'4F46'	101	97	0

D-8

APPEN	IDIX A. ISO	DIS 10)918-1. F	REQUIRE	MENTS A	AND GUIDEL	INES		
40	X'261F'	68	41	0	97	X'47E5'	102	98	
41	X'1F33'	69	42	0	98	X'41CF'	103	99	
42	X'19A8'	70	43	0	99	X'3C3D'	104	100	
43	X'1518'	72	44	0	100	X'375E'	99	93	
44	X'1177'	73	45	0	101	X'5231'	105	102	
45	X'0E74'	74	46	0	102	X'4C0F'	106	103	
46	X'0BFB'	75	47	0	103	X'4639'	107	104	
47	X'09F8'	77	48	0	104	X'415E'	103	99	
48	X'0861'	78	49	0	105	X'5627'	105	106	
49	X'0706'	79	50	0	106	X'50E7'	108	107	
50	X'05CD'	48	51	0	107	X'4B85'	109	103	
51	X'04DE'	50	52	0	108	X'5597'	110	109	
52	X'040F'	50	53	0	109	X'504F'	111	107	
53	X'0363'	51	54	0	110	X'5A10'	110	111	
54	X'02D4'	52	55	0	111	X'5522'	112	109	

Т

X'59EB' 112

D.1.5.2 Renormalization driven estimation

X'025C'

X'01F8'

The change in state in Table D.2 occurs only when the arithmetic coder interval register is re-normalized. This must always be done after coding an LPS, and whenever the probability inter-val register is less than X'8000' (0.75 in decimal notation) after coding an MPS.

When the LPS renormalization is required, Next_Index_LPS gives the new index for the LPS probability estimate. When the MPS renormalization is required, Next_Index_MPS gives the new index for the LPS probability estimate. If Switch_MPS is 1 for the old index, the MPS symbol sense must be inverted after an LPS.

D.1.5.3 Estimation following renormalization after MPS

The procedure for estimating the probability on the MPS renormalization path is given in Figure D.5. Index(S) is part of the information stored for context-index S. The new value of Index(S) is obtained from Table D.2 from the column labeled Next_Index_MPS, as that is the next index after an MPS renormalization. This next index is stored as the new value of Index(S) in the context storage at context-index S, and the value of Qe at this new Index(S) becomes the new Qe(S). MPS(S) does not change.

D-9

υ

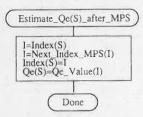


Figure D.5 - Probability estimation on MPS renormalization path

D.1.5.4 Estimation following renormalization after LPS

418

The procedure for estimating the probability on the LPS renormalization path is shown in Figure D.6. The procedure is similar to that of Figure D.5 except that when Switch_MPS(I) is 1, the sense of MPS(S) must be inverted.

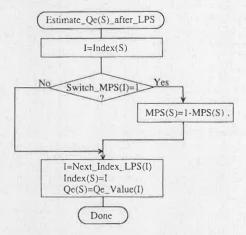


Figure D.6 - Probability estimation on LPS renormalization path

D-10

D.1.6 Renormalization in the encoder

The Renorm_e procedure for the encoder renormalization is shown in Figure D.7. Both the probability interval register A and the code register C are shifted, one bit at a time. The number of shifts is counted in the counter CT; when CT is zero, a byte of compressed data is removed from C by the procedure Byte_out and CT is reset to 8. Renormalization continues until A is no longer less than X'8000'.

419

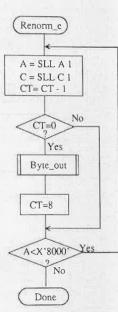


Figure D.7 - Encoder renormalization procedure

The Byte_out procedure used in Renorm_e is shown in Figure D.8. This procedure uses bytestuffing procedures which prevent accidental generation of markers by the arithmetic encoding procedures. It also includes an example of a procedure for resolving carry-over. For simplicity of exposition, the buffer holding the entropy-coded segment is assumed to be large enough to contain the entire segment.

In Figure D.8 BP is the entropy-coded segment pointer and B is the compressed data byte pointed to by BP. T in Byte_out is a temporary variable which is used to hold the output byte and carry bit. SC is the stack counter which is used to count X'FF' output bytes until any carry-

υ

over through the X'FF' sequence has been resolved. The value of SC rarely exceeds 3. However, since the upper limit for the value of SC is bounded only by the total entropy-coded segment size, a precision of 32 bits is recommended for SC.

Since large values of SC represent a latent output of compressed data, the following procedure may be needed in high speed synchronous encoding systems for handling the burst of output data which occurs when the carry is resolved:

When the stack count reaches an upper bound determined by output channel capacity, the stack is emptied and the stacked X'FF' bytes (and stuffed zero bytes) are added to the compressed data before the carry-over is resolved. If a carry-over then occurs, the carry is added to the final stuffed zero, thereby converting the final X'FF00' sequence to the X'FF01' temporary private marker. The entropy-coded segment must then be post-processed to resolve the carry-over and remove the temporary marker code. For any reasonable bound on SC this post processing is very unlikely.

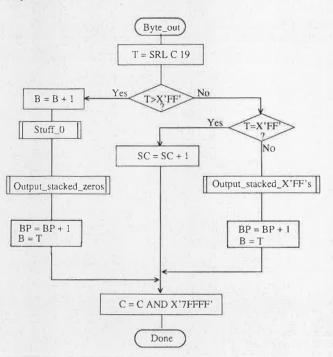


Figure D.8 - Byte_out procedure for encoder

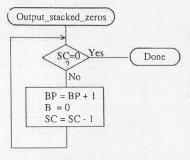
D-12

Referring to Figure D.8 the shift of the code register by 19 bits aligns the output bits with the low order bits of T. The first test then determines if a carry-over has occurred. If so, the carry must be added to the previous output byte before advancing the segment pointer BP. The Stuff_0 procedure stuffs a zero byte whenever the addition of the carry to the data already in the entropy-coded segments creates a X'FF' byte. Any stacked output bytes - converted to zeros by the carry-over - are then placed in the entropy encoder segment. Note that when the output byte is later transferred from T to the entropy-coded segment (to byte B), the carry bit is ignored if it is set.

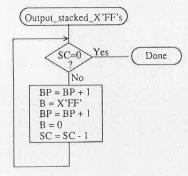
421

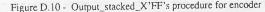
If a carry has not occurred, the output byte is tested to see if it is X'FF'. If so, the stack count SC is incremented, as the output must be delayed until the carry-over is resolved. If not, the carry-over has been resolved, and any stacked X'FF' bytes must then be placed in the entropy-coded segment. Note that a zero byte is stuffed following each X'FF'.

The procedures used by Byte_out are defined in Figures D.9 to D.11.









D-13



U

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

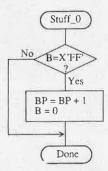


Figure D.11 - Stuff_0 procedure for encoder

D.1.7 Initialization of the encoder

The Initenc procedure is used to start the arithmetic coder. The basic steps are shown in Figure D.12.

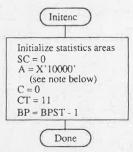


Figure D.12 - Initialization of the encoder

The probability estimation tables are defined by Table D.2. The statistics areas are initialized to an MPS sense of 0 and a Qe index of zero as defined by Table D.2. The stack count (SC) is cleared, the code register (C) is cleared, and the interval register is set to X'10000'. The counter (CT) is set to 11, reflecting the fact that when A is initialized to X'10000' three spacer bits plus eight output bits in C must be filled before the first byte is removed. Note that BP is initialized to point to the byte before the start of the entropy-coded segment (which is at BPST). Note also that the statistics areas are initialized for all values of context-index S to MPS(S)=0 and Index(S)=0.

NOTE - Although the probability interval is initialized to X'10000' in both Initenc and Initdec, the precision of the probability interval register can still be limited to 16 bits. When the precision of the interval register is 16 bits, it is initialized to zero.



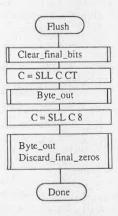
D.1.8 Termination of encoding

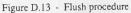
The Flush procedure is used to terminate the arithmetic encoding procedures and prepare the entropy-coded segment for the addition of the X'FF' prefix of the marker which follows the arithmetically coded data. Figure D.13 shows this flush procedure. The first step in the procedure is to set as many low order bits of the code register to zero as possible without pointing outside of the final interval. Then, the output byte is aligned by shifting it left by CT bits; Byte_out then removes it from C. C is then shifted left by 8 bits to align the second output byte and Byte_out is used a second time. The remaining low order bits in C are guaranteed to be zero, and these trailing zero bits shall not be written to the entropy-coded segment.

423

Any trailing zero bytes already written to the entropy-coded segment and not preceded by a X'FF' may, optionally, be discarded. This is done in the Discard_final_zeros procedure. Stuffed zero bytes shall not be discarded.

Entropy coded segments are always followed by a marker. For this reason, the final zero bits needed to complete decoding shall not be included in the entropy coded segment. Instead, when the decoder encounters a marker, zero bits shall be supplied to the decoding procedure until decoding is complete. This convention guarantees that when a DNL marker is used, the decoder will intercept it in time to correctly terminate the decoding procedure.







Q

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

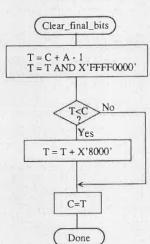


Figure D.14 - Clear_final_bits procedure in Flush

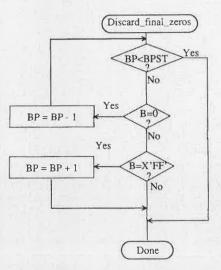


Figure D.15 - Discard_final_zeros procedure in Flush

D-16

U)

D.2 Arithmetic decoding procedures

Three arithmetic decoding procedures are used for arithmetic decoding. They are:

Table D.3 Procedures for binary arithmetic decoding

Procedure	Purpose
Decode(S)	Decode a binary decision
Initdec	Initialize the decoder

The "Decode(S)" procedure decodes the binary decision for a given context-index S and returns a value of either 0 or 1. It is the inverse of the "Code_0(S)" and "Code_1(S)" procedures described in D.1. "Initdec" initializes the arithmetic coding entropy decoder.

D.2.1 Binary arithmetic decoding principles

The probability interval subdivision and sub-interval ordering defined for the arithmetic encoding procedures also apply to the arithmetic decoding procedures.

Since the bit stream always points within the current probability interval, the decoding process is a matter of determining, for each decision, which sub-interval is pointed to by the bit stream. This is done recursively, using the same probability interval sub-division process as in the encoder. Each time a decision is decoded, the decoder subtracts from the bit stream any interval the encoder added to the bit stream. Therefore, the code register in the decoder is a pointer into the current probability interval relative to the base of the interval.

If the size of the sub-interval allocated to the LPS is larger than the sub-interval allocated to the MPS, the encoder invokes the conditional exchange procedure. When the interval sizes are inverted in the decoder, the sense of the symbol decoded must be inverted.

D.2.2 Decoding conventions and approximations

The approximations and integer arithmetic defined for the probability interval subdivision in the encoder must also be used in the decoder. However, where the encoder would have added to the code register, the decoder subtracts from the code register.

D.2.3 Decoder code register conventions

The flow charts given in this section assume the following register structures for the decoder:

	MSB	LSB
Cx register	xxxxxxxx,	XXXXXXXX
C-low	bbbbbbbbb,	00000000
A-register	aaaaaaaa,	aaaaaaaa

Cx and C-low can be regarded as one 32 bit C-register, in that renormalization of C shifts a bit of new data from bit 15 of C-low to bit 0 of Cx. However, the decoding comparisons use Cx alone. New data are inserted into the "b" bits of C-low one byte at a time.

D-17

NOTE: The comparisons shown in the various procedures use arithmetic comparisons, and therefore assume precisions greater than 16 bits for the variables. Unsigned (logical) comparisons should be used in 16 bit precision implementations.

D.2.4 The decode procedure

The decoder decodes one binary decision at a time. After decoding the decision, the decoder subtracts any amount from the code register that the encoder added. The amount left in the code register is the offset from the base of the current probability interval to the sub-interval allocated to the binary decisions not yet decoded. In the first test in the decode procedure shown in Figure D.16 the code register is compared to the size of the MPS sub-interval. Unless a conditional exchange is needed, this test determines whether the MPS or LPS for context-index S is decoded. Note that the LPS for context-index S is given by 1-MPS(S).

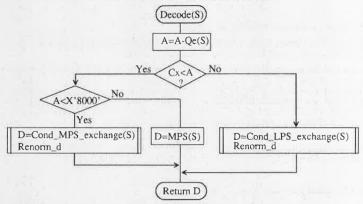


Figure D.16 - Decode(S) procedure

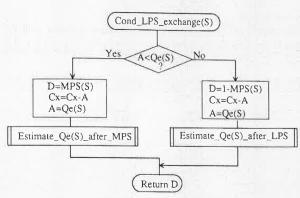
When a renormalization is needed, the MPS/LPS conditional exchange may also be needed. For the LPS path the conditional exchange procedure is shown in Figure D.17. Note that the probability estimation in the decoder is identical to the probability estimation in the encoder (Figures D.5 and D.6).

D-18

O

ω

427





For the MPS path of the decoder the conditional exchange procedure is given in Figure D.18.

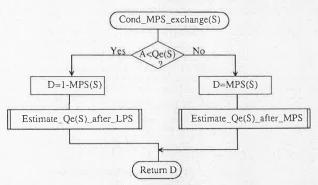


Figure D.18 - Decoder MPS path conditional exchange procedure

D.2.5 Probability estimation in the decoder

The procedures defined for obtaining a new LPS probability estimate in the encoder are also used in the decoder.



Ű

D.2.6 Renormalization in the decoder

428

 \odot

The Renorm_d procedure for the decoder renormalization is shown in Figure D.19. CT is a counter which keeps track of the number of compressed bits in the C-low section of the C-register. When CT is zero, a new byte is inserted into C-low by the procedure Byte_in and CT is reset to 8.

Both the probability interval register A and the code register C are shifted, one bit at a time, until A is no longer less than X'8000'.

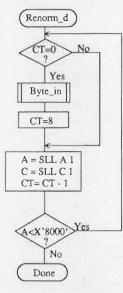
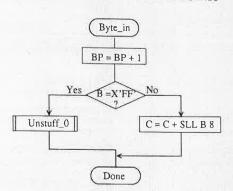


Figure D.19 - Decoder renormalization procedure

The Byte_in procedure used in Renorm_d is shown in Figure D.20. This procedure fetches one byte of data, compensating for the stuffed zero byte which follows any X'FF' byte. It also detects the marker which must follow the entropy-coded segment. The C-register in this procedure is the concatenation of the Cx and C-low registers. For simplicity of exposition, the buffer holding the entropy-coded segment is assumed to be large enough to contain the entire segment.





429

Figure D.20 - Byte_in procedure for decoder

B is the byte pointed to by the entropy-coded segment pointer BP. BP is first incremented. If the new value of B is not a X'FF', it is inserted into the high order 8 bits of C-low.

The Unstuff_0 procedure is shown in Figure D.21. If the new value of B is X'FF', BP is incremented to point to the next byte and this next B is tested to see if it is zero. If so, B contains a stuffed byte which must be skipped. The zero B is ignored, and the X"FF" B value which preceded it is inserted in the C-register.

If the value of B after a X'FF' byte is not zero, then a marker has been detected. The marker is interpreted as required and the entropy-coded segment pointer is adjusted ("Adjust BP" in Figure D.21) so that 0-bytes will be fed to the decoder until decoding is complete. One way of accomplishing this is to point BP to the byte preceding the marker which follows the entropy-coded segment.

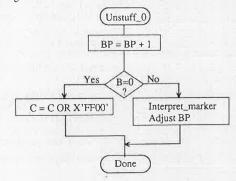


Figure D.21 - Unstuff_0 procedure for decoder

D-21

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

D.2.7 Initialization of the decoder

The Initdec procedure is used to start the arithmetic decoder. The basic steps are shown in Figure D.22.

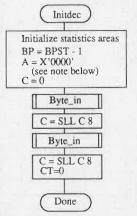


Figure D.22 - Initialization of the decoder

The estimation tables are defined by Table D.2. The statistics areas are initialized to an MPS sense of 0 and a Qe index of zero as defined by Table D.2. BP, the pointer to the entropy-coded segment, is then initialized to point to the byte before the start of the entropy-coded segment at BPST, and the interval register is set to the same starting value as in the encoder. The first byte of compressed data is fetched and shifted into Cx. The second byte is then fetched and shifted into Cx. The count is set to zero, so that a new byte of data will be fetched by Renorm_d.

NOTE - Although the probability interval is initialized to X'10000' in both Initenc and Initedc, the precision of the probability interval register can still be limited to 16 bits. When the precision of the interval register is 16 bits, it is initialized to zero.

D.3 Bit ordering within bytes

0

The arithmetically encoded entropy-coded segment is an integer of variable length. Therefore, the ordering of bytes and the bit ordering within bytes is the same as for parameters (see B.1.1.1).



Annex E (normative)

Encoder and decoder control procedures

This annex describes the encoder and decoder control procedures for the sequential, progressive, and lossless modes of operation.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

431

E.1 Encoder control procedures

E.1.1 Control procedure for encoding an image

The encoder control procedure for encoding an image is shown in Figure E.1.

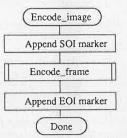


Figure E.1 - Control procedure for encoding an image

E.1.2 Control procedure for encoding a frame

In all cases where markers are appended to the compressed data, optional X'FF' fill bytes may precede the marker.

The control procedure for encoding a frame is oriented around the scans in the frame. The frame header is first appended, and then the scans are coded. Table specifications and other marker segments may precede the SOF marker, as indicated by [tables/misc.] in Figure E.2.

Figure E.2 shows the encoding process frame control procedure.



U

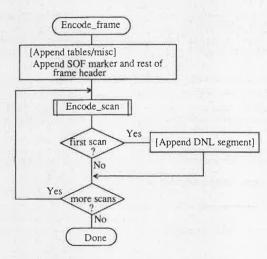


Figure E.2 - Control procedure for encoding a frame

E.1.3 Control procedure for encoding a scan

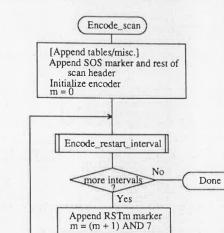
432

A scan consists of a single pass through the data of each component in the scan. Table specifications and other marker segments may precede the SOS marker. If more than one component is coded in the scan, the data are interleaved. If restart is enabled, the data are segmented into restart intervals; the encoding process is reset at the start of each restart interval.

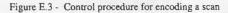
If restart is enabled, a RSTm marker is placed in the coded data between each restart interval. If restart is disabled, the control procedure is the same, except that the entire scan contains a single restart interval. The compressed image data generated by a scan is always followed by a marker.

Figure E.3 shows the encoding process scan control procedure. The loop is terminated when the encoding process has coded the number of restart intervals which make up the scan. Note that the number of minimum coded units (MCU) in the final restart interval must be adjusted to match the number of MCU in the scan. The number of MCU is calculated from the frame and scan parameters (see Annex B). "m" is the restart interval modulo counter needed for the RSTm marker. The modulo arithmetic for this counter is shown after the "Append RSTm marker" procedure.





APPENDIX A. ISO DIS 10918-1. REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES



E.1.4 Control procedure for encoding a restart interval

Figure E.4 shows the encoding process control procedure for a restart interval. The loop is terminated either when the encoding process has coded the number of minimum coded units (MCU) in the restart interval or when it has completed the image scan.



U

Q

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

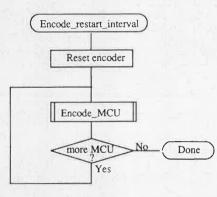


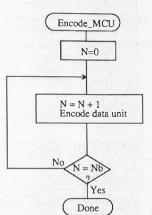
Figure E.4 - Control procedure for encoding a restart interval

If the encoding process is reset, the DC predictions are set to defaults. If arithmetic coding is used, the statistics areas are also reset. If the number of lines must be set or reset, the DNL marker segment shall precede the marker which would normally follow first scan in the frame. If the DNL marker is used, no more restart intervals shall be coded in the scan.

E.1.5 Control procedure for encoding a minimum coded unit (MCU)

The minimum coded unit is defined in A.2. Within a given MCU the data units are coded in the order in which they occur in the MCU. The control procedure for encoding a MCU is shown Figure E.5.





435

Figure E.5 - Control procedure for encoding a minimum coded unit (MCU)

In Figure E.5, Nb refers to the number of data units in the MCU. The order in which data units occur in the MCU is defined in A.2. The data unit is an 8x8 block for DCT-based processes, and a single sample for lossless processes.



U

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

E.2 Decoder control procedure

E.2.1 Control procedure for decoding an image

Figure E.6 shows the decoding process control for an image.

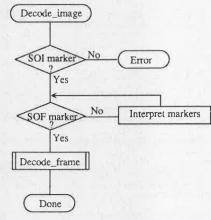


Figure E.6 - Control procedure for decoding an image

Decoding control centers around identification of various markers. The first marker must be the SOI (Start Of Image) marker. The next marker is normally a SOFn (Start Of Frame) marker; if this is not found, one of the marker segments listed in Table E.1 has been received.

Table E.1 Markers recognized by "Interpret markers"

Marker	Purpose
DHT	Define Huffman Tables
DAC	Define Arithmetic Conditioning
DQT	Define Quantization Tables
DRI	Define Restart Interval
APPn	Application defined marker
COM	Comment

Note that optional X'FF' fill bytes which may precede any marker shall be discarded before determining which marker is present

The additional logic to interpret these various markers is contained in the box labeled "Interpret markers". DHT markers shall be interpreted by processes using Huffman coding. DAC markers shall be interpreted by processes using arithmetic coding. DQT markers shall be interpreted

E-6

by DCT-based decoders. DRI markers shall be interpreted by all decoders. APPn and COM markers shall be interpreted only to the extent that they do not interfere with the decoding.

437

Decoding is terminated when the decoder finds the EOI marker. By definition, the procedures in "Interpret markers" leave the system at the next marker. Note that if the expected SOI marker is missing at the start of the compressed image data, an error condition has occurred. The techniques for detecting and managing error conditions can be as elaborate or as simple as desired.

E.2.2 Control procedure for decoding a frame

Figure E.7 shows the control procedure for the decoding of a frame.

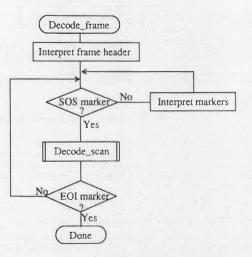


Figure E.7 - Control procedure for decoding a frame

The loop is terminated if the EOI marker is found at the end of the scan.

The markers recognized by "Interpret markers" are listed in Table E.1. E.2.1 describes the extent to which the various markers shall be interpreted.

E-7

U

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

E.2.3 Control procedure for decoding a scan

Figure E.8 shows the decoding of a scan.

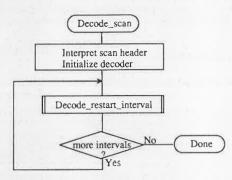


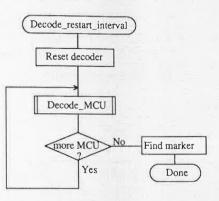
Figure E.8 - Control procedure for decoding a scan

The loop is terminated when the expected number of restart intervals has been decoded. Note that the final restart interval may be smaller than the size specified by the DRI marker segment, as it includes only the number of MCUs remaining in the scan. The decoder is reset at the start of each restart interval.

E.2.4 Control procedure for decoding a restart interval

The procedure for decoding a restart interval is shown in Figure E.9. At the end of the restart interval, the next marker is located. If a problem is detected in locating this marker, error handling procedures may be invoked. While such procedures are optional, the decoder shall be able to correctly recognize RST markers in the compressed data and reset the decoder when they are encountered. The decoder shall also be able to recognize the DNL marker and set the number of lines defined in the DNL segment.

E-8



439

Figure E.9 - Control procedure for decoding a restart interval

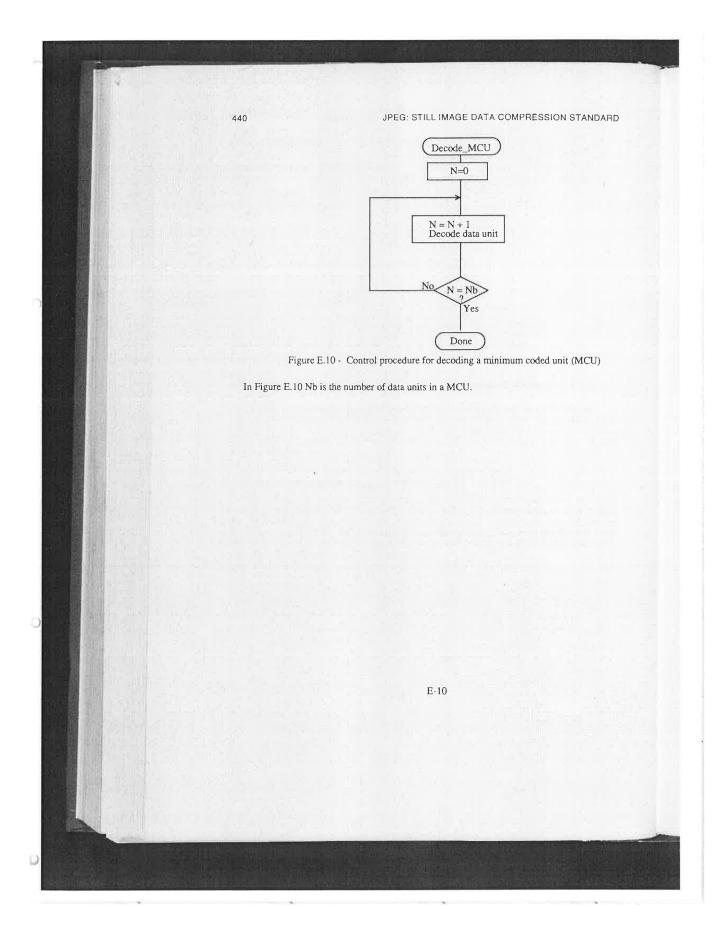
E.2.5 Control procedure for decoding a minimum coded unit (MCU)

The procedure for decoding a minimum coded unit (MCU) is shown in Figure E.10.



Ο.

Ú.



Annex F (normative)

Sequential DCT-based mode of operation

This Annex provides a **functional specification** of the following coding processes for the se-quential DCT-based mode of operation:

441

1) baseline sequential;

2) extended sequential, Huffman coding, 8-bit sample precision;

- 3) extended sequential, arithmetic coding, 8-bit sample precision;
- 4) extended sequential, Huffman coding, 12-bit sample precision;
- 5) extended sequential, arithmetic coding, 12-bit sample precision.

For each of these, the encoding process is specified in F.1, and the decoding process is specified in F.2. The functional specification is presented by means of specific flow charts for the various procedures which comprise these coding processes.

NOTE - There is no requirement in this Specification that any encoder or decoder which embodies one of the above-named processes shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

F.1 Sequential DCT-based encoding processes

F.1.1 Sequential DCT-based control procedures and coding models

F.1.1.1 Control procedures for sequential DCT-based encoders

The control procedures for encoding an image and its constituent parts - the frame, scan, restart interval and MCU - are given in Figures E.1 to E.5. The procedure for encoding a MCU (Figure E.5) repetitively calls the procedure for encoding a data unit. For DCT-based encoders the data unit is an 8x8 block of samples.

F.1.1.2 Procedure for encoding an 8x8 block data unit

In the sequential DCT-based encoding process encoding a 8x8 block data unit consists of the following procedures:

Calculate forward 8x8 DCT and quantize using table assigned in frame header.
 Encode DC coefficient for 8x8 block using DC table assigned in scan header.

(3) Encode AC coefficients for 8x8 block using AC table assigned in scan header.

υ

F.1.1.3 Forward DCT (FDCT)

442

The mathematical definition of the FDCT is given in A.3.3.

Prior to computing the FDCT the input data are level shifted to a signed two's complement representation as described in Annex A. For 8-bit input precision the level shift is achieved by subtracting 128. For 12-bit input precision the level shift is achieved by subtracting 2048.

F.1.1.4 Quantization of the FDCT

The uniform quantization procedure described in Annex A is used to quantize the DCT coefficients. One of four quantization tables may be used by the encoder. No default quantization tables are specified in this Specification. However, some typical quantization tables are given in Annex K.

The quantized DCT values are signed, two's complement integers with 11-bit precision for 8bit input precision and 15-bit precision for 12-bit input precision.

F.1.1.5 Encoding models for the sequential DCT procedures

The two dimensional array of quantized DCT coefficients is rearranged in a zig-zag sequence order defined in A.6. The zig-zag order coefficients are denoted ZZ (0) through ZZ(63) with:

 $\begin{array}{l} ZZ(0) = Sq_{00} \\ ZZ(1) = Sq_{01} \\ ZZ(2) = Sq_{10} \end{array}$ $ZZ(63) = Sq_{77}$

Sq_{ii} are defined in Figure A.6.

Two coding procedures are used, one for the DC coefficient ZZ(0) and the other for the AC coefficients ZZ(1). ZZ(63). The coefficients are encoded in the order in which they occur in ZZ, starting with the DC coefficient. The coefficients are represented as two's complement integers.

F.1.1.5.1 Encoding model for DC coefficients

The DC coefficients are coded differentially, using a one-dimensional predictor, PRED, which is the quantized DC value from the most recently coded 8x8 block from the same component. The difference, DIFF, is obtained from

DIFF=ZZ(0)-PRED.

At the beginning of the scan and at the beginning of each restart interval, the prediction for the DC coefficient prediction is initialized to 0. (Recall that the input data have been level shifted to two's complement representation.)

F.1.1.5.2 Encoding model for AC coefficients

Since many coefficients are zero, runs of zeros are identified and coded efficiently. In addition, if the last part of ZZ is entirely zero, this is coded explicitly as an end-of-block (EOB).

F-2

υ

F.1.2 Baseline Huffman encoding procedures

The baseline encoding procedure is for 8-bit sample precision. The encoder may employ up to two DC and two AC Huffman tables within one scan.

F.1.2.1. Huffman encoding of DC coefficients

F.1.2.1.1 Structure of DC code table

5

The DC code table consists of a set of Huffman codes (maximum length 16 bits) and appended additional bits (in most cases) which can code any possible value of DIFF, the difference between the current DC coefficient and the prediction. The Huffman codes for the difference categories are generated in such a way that no code consists entirely of 1-bits (X'FF' prefix marker code avoided).

The two's complement difference magnitudes are grouped into 12 categories, SSSS, and a Huffman code is created for each of the 12 difference magnitude categories.

Table F.1 Difference magnitude categories for DC coding

SSSS	DIFF values
0	0
1	-1,1
2	-3,-2,2,3
3	-74,47
4	-158,815
5	-3116,1631
6	-6332,3263
7	-12764,64127
8	-255128,128255
9	-511256,256511
10	-1023512,5121023
11	-20471024,10242047

For each category, except SSSS=0, an additional bits field is appended to the code word to uniquely identify which difference in that category actually occurred. The number of extra bits is given by SSSS; the extra bits are appended to the LSB of the preceding Huffman code, most significant bit first. When DIFF is positive, the SSSS low order bits of DIFF are transmitted. When DIFF is negative, the SSSS low order bits of (DIFF-1) are transmitted. Note that the most significant bit of the appended bit sequence is 0 for negative differences and 1 for positive differences.

F-3

Q

F.1.2.1.2 Defining Huffman tables for the DC coefficients

444

The syntax for specifying the Huffman tables is given in Annex B. The procedure for creating a code table from this information is described in Annex C. No more than two Huffman tables may be defined for coding of DC coefficients. Two examples of Huffman tables for coding of DC coefficients are provided in Annex K.

F.1.2.1.3 Huffman encoding procedures for DC coefficients

The encoding procedure is defined in terms of a set of extended tables, XHUFCO and XHUFSI, which contain the complete set of Huffman codes and sizes for all possible difference values. For full 12 bit precision the tables are relatively large. For the baseline system, however, the precision of the differences may be small enough to make this description practical.

XHUFCO and XHUFSI are generated from the encoder tables EHUFCO and EHUFSI (see Annex C) by appending to the Huffman codes for each difference category the additional bits that completely define the difference. By definition, XHUFCO and XHUFSI have entries for each possible difference value. XHUFCO contains the concatenated bit pattern of the Huffman code and the additional bits field; XHUFSI contains the total length in bits of this concatenated bit pattern. Both are indexed by DIFF, the difference between the DC coefficient and the prediction.

The Huffman encoding procedure for the DC difference, DIFF, is:

SIZE=XHUFSI(DIFF) CODE=XHUFCO(DIFF) code SIZE bits of CODE

where DC is the quantized DC coefficient value and PRED is the predicted quantized DC value. The Huffman code (CODE) (including any additional bits) is obtained from XHUFCO and SIZE (length of the code including additional bits) is obtained from XHUFSI, using DIFF as the index to the two tables.

F.1.2.2 Huffman encoding of AC coefficients

F.1.2.2.1 Structure of AC code table

Each nonzero AC coefficient in ZZ is described by a composite 8-bit value, RS, of the form

RS = binary 'RRRRSSSS'

The 4 least significant bits, 'SSSS', define a category for the amplitude of the next nonzero coefficient in ZZ, and the 4 most significant bits, 'RRRR', give the position of the coefficient in ZZ relative to the previous nonzero coefficient (i.e. the run-length of zero coefficients between nonzero coefficients). Since the run length of zero coefficients may exceed 15, the value 'RRRRSSS'=X'FO' is defined to represent a run length of 15 zero coefficients followed by a coefficient of zero amplitude. (This can be interpreted as a run length of 16 zero coefficients.) In addition, a special value 'RRRRSSS'='00000000' is used to code the end-of-block (EOB), when all remaining coefficients in the block are zero.

F-4

The general structure of the code table is illustrated in Figure F.1.

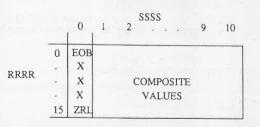


Figure F.1 - Two-dimensional value array for Huffman coding

445

The entries marked 'X' are undefined for the baseline procedure.

S

The magnitude ranges assigned to each value of SSSS are defined in table F.2. Table F.2. Categories assigned to coefficient values

SSS	AC coefficients
1	-1,1
2	-3,-2,2,3
3	-74,47
4	-158,815
5	-3116,1631
6	-6332,3263
7	-12764,64127
8	-255128,128255
9	-511256,256511
10	-1023512,5121023

The composite value, RRRRSSSS, is Huffman coded and each Huffman code is followed by additional bits (assumed to be randomly distributed and thus uncoded) which specify the sign and exact amplitude of the coefficient.

The AC code table consists of one Huffman code (maximum length 16 bits, not including additional bits) for each possible composite value. The Huffman codes for the 8-bit composite values are generated in such a way that no code consists entirely of 1-bits.

The format for the additional bits is the same as in the coding of the DC coefficients. ZZ(K) is the Kth coefficient in the zig-zag sequence of coefficients being coded. The value of SSSS gives the number of additional bits required to specify the sign and precise amplitude of the coefficient. The additional bits are either the low-order SSSS bits of ZZ(K) when ZZ(K) is positive or the low-order SSSS bits of ZZ(K)-1 when ZZ(K) is negative.



υ

F.1.2.2.2.2 Defining Huffman tables for the AC coefficients

446

The syntax for specifying the Huffman tables is given in Annex B. The procedure for creating a code table from this information is described in Annex C.

In the baseline system no more than two Huffman tables may be defined for coding of AC coefficients. Two examples of Huffman tables for coding of AC coefficients are provided in Annex K.

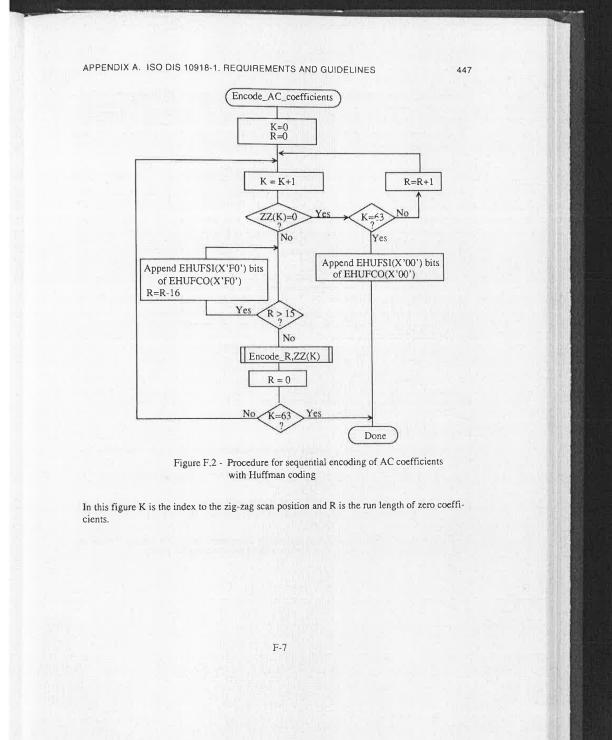
F.1.2.2.3 Huffman encoding procedures for AC coefficients

As defined in Annex C, the Huffman code table is assumed to be available as a pair of vectors, EHUFCO (containing the code bits) and EHUFSI (containing the length of each code in bits), both indexed by the composite value defined above.

The procedure for encoding the AC coefficients in a block is shown in Figures F.2 and F.3.

F-6

-



Q

 \odot

The procedure "Code EHUFSI(240) bits of EHUFCO(240)" codes a run of 16 zero coefficients (ZRL code of Figure F.2). The procedure "Code EHUFSI(0) bits of EHUFCO(0)" codes the end-of-block (EOB code). If the last coefficient (K=63) is not zero, the EOB code is bypassed.

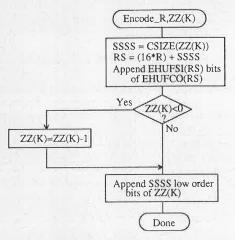


Figure F.3 - Sequential encoding of a nonzero AC coefficient

CSIZE is a procedure which maps an AC coefficient to the SSSS value as defined in Table F.2.

F.1.2.3 Byte stuffing

In order to provide code space for marker codes which can be located in the compressed image data without decoding, byte stuffing is used.

Whenever, in the course of normal encoding, the byte value X'FF' is created in the code string, a X'00' byte is stuffed into the code string.

If a X'00' byte is detected after a X'FF' byte, the decoder must discard it. If the byte is not zero, a marker has been detected, and shall be interpreted to the extent needed to complete the decoding of the scan.

Byte alignment of markers is achieved by padding incomplete bytes with 1-bits. If padding with 1-bits creates a X'FF' value, a zero byte is stuffed before adding the marker.



F.1.3 Sequential DCT encoding process with 8-bit precision extended to four sets of Huffman tables

449

This process is identical to the Baseline encoding process described in F.1.2, with the exception that the number of sets of Huffman tables which may be used within the same scan is increased to four. Four DC and four AC Huffman tables is the maximum allowed by this Specification.

F.1.4. Sequential DCT encoding process with arithmetic coding

This subclause describes the use of arithmetic coding procedures in the sequential DCT-based encoding process.

The arithmetic coding extensions have the same DCT model as the Baseline DCT encoder. Therefore, Annex F.1.1 also applies to arithmetic coding. As with the Huffman coding technique, the binary arithmetic coding technique is lossless. It is possible to transcode between the two systems without either FDCT or IDCT computations, and without modification of the reconstructed image.

The basic principles of adaptive binary arithmetic coding are described in Annex D. Up to four DC and four AC conditioning tables and associated statistics areas may be used within one scan.

The arithmetic encoding procedures for encoding binary decisions, initializing the statistics area, initializing the encoder, terminating the code string, and adding restart markers are listed in Table D.1 of Annex D.

Some of the procedures in Table D.1 are used in the higher level control structure for scans and restart intervals described in Annex E. At the beginning of scans and restart intervals, the probability estimates used in the arithmetic coder are reset to the standard initial value as part of the Initenc procedure which restarts the arithmetic coder. At the end of scans and restart intervals, the Flush procedure is invoked to empty the code register before the next marker is appended.

F-9

0

F.1.4.1 Arithmetic encoding of DC coefficients

450

The basic structure of the decision sequence for encoding a DC difference value, DIFF, is shown in Figure F.4.

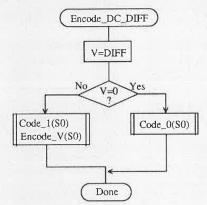


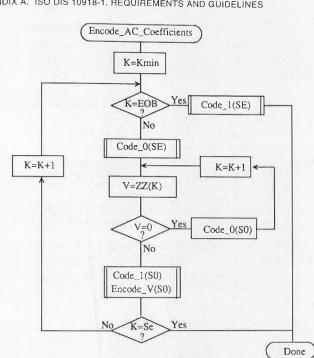
Figure F.4 - Coding model for arithmetic coding of DC difference

The context-index S0 and other context-indices used in the DC coding procedures are defined in Table F.4 (see F.1.4.4.1.3). A 0-decision is coded if the difference value is zero and a 1decision is coded if the difference is not zero. If the difference is not zero, the sign and magnitude are coded using the procedure $Encode_V(S0)$, which is described in F.1.4.3.1.

F.1.4.2 Arithmetic encoding of AC coefficients

The AC coefficients are coded in the order in which they occur in the zig-zag sequence ZZ(1,...,63). An end-of-block (EOB) binary decision is coded before coding the first AC coefficient in ZZ, and after each nonzero coefficient. If the EOB occurs, all remaining coefficients in ZZ are zero. Figure F.5 illustrates the decision sequence. The equivalent procedure for the Huffman coder is found in Figure F.2.

F-10



451

APPENDIX A. ISO DIS 10918-1. REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES



The context-indices SE and S0 used in the AC coding procedures are defined in Table F.5 (see F.1.4.4.2). In Figure F.5 K is the index to the zig-zag sequence position. For the sequential scan, Kmin is 1 and Se is 63. The V=0 decision is part of a loop which codes runs of zero coefficients. Whenever the coefficient is nonzero, "Encode_V(S0)" codes the sign and magnitude of the coefficient. Each time a nonzero coefficient is coded, it is followed by an EOB decision. If the EOB occurs, a 1-decision is coded to indicate that the coding of the block is complete. Note that if the coefficient for K=Se is not zero, the EOB decision is skipped.

F-11

Ð

F.1.4.3 Encoding the binary decision sequence for nonzero DC differences and AC coeffcients

Both the DC difference and the AC coefficients are represented as signed two's complement 16 bit integer values. The decomposition of these signed integer values into a binary decision tree is done in the same way for both the DC and AC coding models.

Although the binary decision trees for this section of the DC and AC coding models are the same, the statistical models for assigning statistics bins to the binary decisions in the tree are quite different.

F.1.4.3.1 Structure of the encoding decision sequence

452

The encoding sequence can be separated into three procedures, a procedure which encodes the sign, a second procedure which identifies the magnitude category, and a third procedure which identifies precisely which magnitude occurred within the category identified in the second procedure.

At the point where the binary decision sequence in $Encode_V(S0)$ starts, the coefficient or difference has already been determined to be nonzero. That determination was made in the procedures in Figures F.4 and F.5.

Denoting either DC differences (DIFF) or AC coefficients as V, the nonzero signed integer value of V is encoded by the sequence shown in Figure F.6. This sequence first codes the sign of V. It then (after converting V to a magnitude and decrementing it by 1 to give Sz) codes the magnitude category of Sz (code_log2_Sz), and then codes the low order magnitude bits (code_Sz_bits) to identify the exact magnitude value.

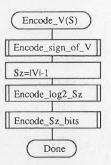


Figure F.6 - Sequence of procedures in encoding nonzero values of V $% \left({{{\mathbf{V}}_{{\mathbf{v}}}}_{{\mathbf{v}}}} \right)$

There are two significant differences between this sequence and the similar set of operations described in F.1.2 for Huffman coding. First, the sign is encoded before the magnitude category is identified, and second, the magnitude is decremented by 1 before the magnitude category is identified.

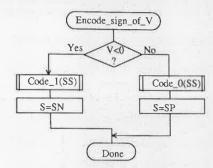


)

F.1.4.3.1.1 Encoding the sign

The sign is encoded by coding a 0-decision when the sign is positive and a 1-decision when the sign is negative.

453





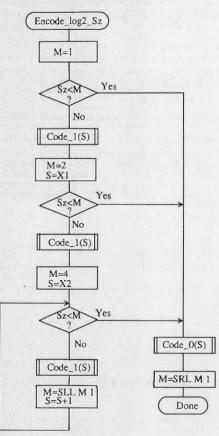
The context-indices SS, SN and SP are defined for DC coding in Table F.4 and for AC coding in Table F.5. After the sign is coded, the context-index S is set to either SN or SP, establishing an initial value for Encode_log2_Sz.

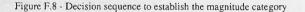
F-13

F.1.4.3.1.2 Encoding the magnitude category

454

The magnitude category is determined by a sequence of binary decisions which compares Sz against an exponentially increasing bound (which is a power of 2) in order to determine the position of the leading 1-bit. This establishes the magnitude category in much the same way that the Huffman encoder transmits a code for the value associated with the difference category. The flow chart for this procedure is shown in Figure F.8.





F-14

 \odot

The starting value of the context-index S is determined in $Encode_sign_of_V$, and the context-index values X1 and X2 are defined for DC coding in Table F.4 and for AC coding in Table F.5. In this figure M is the exclusive upper bound for the magnitude and the abbreviations "SLL" and "SRL" refer to the shift-left-logical and shift-right-logical operations - in this case by one bit position. The SRL operation at the completion of the procedure aligns M with the most significant bit of Sz.

Table F.3 Categories for each maximum bound

exclusive upper bound (M)	Sz range	number of low order magnitude bits
1	0	0
2	1	0
4	2,3	1
8	4,,7	2
16	8,,15	3
32	16,,31	4
64	32,,63	5
128	64,,127	6
256	128,,255	7
512	256,,511	8
1024	512,,1023	9
2048	1024,,2047	10
4096	2048,,4095	11
8192	4096,,8191	12
16384	8192,,16383	13
32768	16384,,32767	14

The highest precision allowed for the DCT is 15 bits. Therefore, the highest precision required for the coding decision tree is 16 bits for the DC coefficient difference and 15 bits for the AC coefficients, including the sign bit.

F.1.4.3.1.3 Encoding the exact value of the magnitude

After the magnitude category is encoded, the low order magnitude bits are encoded. These bits are encoded in order of decreasing bit significance. The procedure is shown in Figure F.9. The abbreviation "SRL" indicates the shift-right-logical operation, and M is the exclusive bound established in Figure F.8; note that M has only one bit set; shifting M right converts it into a bit mask for the logical "AND" operation.

0

F-15

456

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

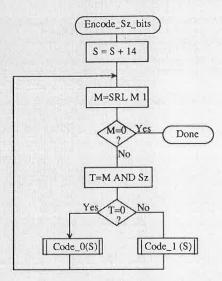


Figure F.9 - Decision sequence to code the magnitude bit pattern

The starting value of the context-index S is determined in $Encode_log2_Sz$. The increment of S by 14 at the beginning of this procedure sets the context-index to the value required in Tables F.4 and F.5.

F.1.4.4 Statistical models

An adaptive binary arithmetic coder requires a statistical model. The statistics model defines the contexts which are used to select the conditional probability estimates used in the encoding and decoding procedures.

Each decision in the binary decision trees is associated with one or more contexts. These contexts identify the sense of the MPS and the index in Table D.2 of the conditional probability estimate Qe which is used to encode and decode the binary decision.

The arithmetic, coder is adaptive, which means that the probability estimates for each context are developed and maintained by the arithmetic coding system on the basis of prior coding decisions for that context.

F.1.4.4.1 Statistical model for coding DC prediction differences

The statistical model for coding the DC difference conditions some of the probability estimates for the binary decisions on previous DC coding decisions.

457

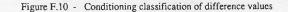
F.1.4.4.1.1 Statistical conditioning on sign

In coding the DC coefficients, four separate statistics bins (probability estimates) are used in coding the zero/not-zero (V=0) decision, the sign decision and the first magnitude category decision. Two of these bins are used to code the V=0 decision and the sign decision. The other two bins are used in coding the first magnitude decision, Sz<1; one of these bins is used when the sign is positive, and the other is used when the sign is negative. Thus, the first magnitude decision probability estimate is conditioned on the sign of V.

F.1.4.4.1.2 Statistical conditioning on DC difference in previous block

The probability estimates for these first three decisions are also conditioned on Da, the difference value coded for the previous DCT block of the same component. The differences are classified into five groups: zero, small positive, small negative, large positive and large negative. The relationship between the default classification and the quantization scale is shown in Figure F.10.

			-					+5	DC difference
	+ 1	+ + 1	1	1		di.	+	+-	
- large		- small	0	+ sn	nall			+ large	classification



The bounds for the "small" difference category determine the classification. Defining L and U as integers in the range 0 to 15 inclusive, the lower bound (exclusive) for difference magnitudes classified as "small" is zero for L=0, and is 2^{L-1} for L>0.

The upper bound (inclusive) for difference magnitudes classified as "small" is 2^U.

L shall be less than or equal to U.

These bounds for the conditioning category provide a segmentation which is identical to that listed in table F.3.

F-17

Page 157

F.1.4.4.1.3 Assignment of statistical bins to the DC binary decision tree

As shown in Table F.4, each statistics area for DC coding consists of a contiguous set of 49 statistics bins. The first 20 bins consist of five sets of four bins selected by a context-index S0. The value of S0 is given by DC_Context(Da), which provides a value of 0, 4, 8, 12 or 16, depending on the difference classification of Da (see F.1.4.4.1.2). The remaining 29 bins, X1,...,X15,M2,...,M15, are used to code magnitude category decisions and magnitude bits.

Table F.4. Statistical model for DC coefficient coding

Context-index	Value	Coding decision
S0	DC_Context(Da)	V=0
SS	S0+1	sign of V
SP	S0+2	Sz<1 if V>0
SN	S0+3	Sz<1 if V<0
X1	20	Sz<2
X2	X1+1	Sz<4
X3	X1+2	Sz<8
X15	X1+14	Sz<2 ¹⁵
M2	X2+14	magnitude bits if Sz<4
M3	X3+14	magnitude bits if Sz<8
M15	X15+14	magnitude bits if Sz<2 ¹⁵

F.1.4.4.1.4 Default conditioning for DC statistical model

The bounds, L and U, for determining the conditioning category have the default values L=0 and U=1. Other bounds may be set using the DAC (Define Arithmetic coding Conditioning) marker segment, as described in Annex B.

F.1.4.4.1.5 Initial conditions for DC statistical model

At the start of a scan and at the beginning of each restart interval, the difference for the previous DC value is defined to be zero in determining the conditioning state.

F.1.4.4.2 Statistical model for coding the AC coefficients

As shown in Table F.5, each statistics area for AC coding consists of a contiguous set of 245 statistics bins. Three bins are used for each value of the zig-zag index K, and two sets of 28 additional bins X2,...,X15,M2,...,M15 are used for coding the magnitude category and magnitude bits.

The value of SE (and also S0, SP and SN) is determined by the zig-zag index K. Since K is in the range 1 to 63, the lowest value for SE is 0 and the largest value for SP is 188. SS is not assigned a value in AC coefficient coding, as the signs of the coefficients are coded with a fixed probability value of 0.5 (Qe=X'5A1D', mps=0).

F-18

)

Table F.5 Statistical model for AC coefficient coding

459

Context-index	Value	Coding decision
SE S0 SS SN,SP X1 X2 X3	3×(K-1) SE+1 fixed estimate S0+1 S0+1 AC_Context(K) X2+1	K=EOB V=0 Sz<1 Sz<2 Sz<4 Sz<8
X15 M2 M3	X2+13 X2+14 X3+14	Sz<2 ¹⁵ magnitude bits if Sz<4 magnitude bits if Sz<8
11 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1		•
M15	X15+14	magnitude bits if Sz<2 ¹

The value of X2 is given by AC_Context(K). This gives X2=189 when K<=Kx and X2=217 when K>Kx, where Kx is defined using the DAC marker segment (see B.2.4.3)

Note that a X1 statistics bin is not used in this sequence. Instead, the 63x1 array of statistics bins for the magnitude category is used for two decisions. Once the magnitude bound has been determined - at statistics bin Xn, for example - a single statistics bin, Bn, is used to code the magnitude bit sequence for that bound.

F.1.4.4.2.1 Default conditioning for AC coefficient coding

The default value of Kx is 5. This may be modified using the DAC marker segment, as described in Annex B.

F.1.4.4.2.2 Initial conditions for AC statistical model

At the start of a scan and at each restart, all statistics bins are re-initialized to the standard default value described in Annex D.

F.1.5 Sequential DCT encoding process with Huffman coding and 12-bit precision

This process is identical to the sequential DCT process for 8-bit precision extended to four Huffman tables as documented in F.1.3, with the following changes.

F.1.5.1 Structure of DC code table for 12-bit input precision

The two's complement difference magnitudes are grouped into 16 categories, SSSS, and a Huffman code is created for each of the 16 difference magnitude categories. The Huffman table for DC coding is extended as shown in Table F.6

F-19

Ψ.

460

5

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

Table F.6 Difference magnitude categories for DC coding

SSSS	Difference values
12	-40952048,20484095
13	-81914096,40968191
14	-163838192,819216383
15	-3276716384,1638432767

F.1.5.2 Structure of AC code table for 12-bit input precision

The general structure of the code table is extended as illustrated in Figure F.11.

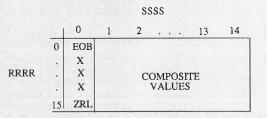


Figure F.11 - Two-dimensional value array for Huffman coding

The Huffman table for AC coding is extended as shown in Table F.7. Table F.7 Values assigned to coefficient amplitude ranges.

SSSS	AC coefficients
11	-20471024,10242047
12	-40952048,20484095
13	-81914096,40968191
14	-163838192,819216383

F.1.6 Sequential DCT encoding process with arithmetic coding and 12-bit precision The process is identical to the sequential DCT process for 8-bit precision except for changes in the precision of the FDCT computation.

The structure of the encoding procedure in F.1.4 is already defined for a 12-bit input precision.

F-20

F.2 Sequential DCT-based decoding processes

F.2.1 Sequential DCT-based control procedures and coding models

F.2.1.1 Control procedures for sequential DCT-based decoders

The control procedures for decoding an image and its constituent parts - the frame, scan, restart interval and MCU - are given in Figures E.6 to E.10. The procedure for decoding a MCU (Figure E.10) repetitively calls the procedure for decoding a data unit. For DCT-based decoders the data unit is an 8x8 block of samples.

F.2.1.2 Procedure for decoding an 8x8 block data unit

In the sequential DCT-based decoding process decoding an 8x8 block data unit consists of the following procedures:

Decode DC coefficient for 8x8 block using the DC table assigned in the scan header.
 Decode AC coefficients for 8x8 block using the AC table assigned in the scan header.
 Dequantize using table assigned in the frame header and calculate the inverse 8x8 DCT.

F.2.1.3 Decoding models for the sequential DCT procedures

Two decoding procedures are used, one for the DC coefficient ZZ(0) and the other for the AC coefficients ZZ(1)...ZZ(63). The coefficients are decoded in the order in which they occur in ZZ, starting with the DC coefficient. The coefficients are represented as two's complement integers.

F.2.1.3.1 Decoding model for DC coefficients

The decoded difference, DIFF, is added to PRED, the DC value from the most recently decoded 8x8 block from the same component. Thus ZZ(0) = PRED + DIFF.

At the beginning of the scan and at the beginning of each restart interval, the prediction for the DC coefficient is initialized to 0.

F.2.1.3.2 Decoding model for AC coefficients

The AC coefficients are decoded in the order in which they occur in ZZ. When the EOB is decoded, all remaining coefficients in ZZ are set to zero.

F.2.1.4 Dequantization of the quantized DCT coefficients

The dequantization of the quantized DCT coefficients as described in Annex A, is accomplished by multiplying each quantized coefficient value by the quantization table value for that coefficient. The decoder shall be able to use up to four quantization tables.



J

F.2.1.5 Inverse DCT (IDCT)

462

The mathematical definition of the IDCT is given in A.3.3.

After computation of the IDCT, the signed output samples are level-shifted, as described in Annex A, converting the output to an unsigned representation. If necessary, the output samples should be clamped to stay within the range appropriate for the precision.

F.2.2 Baseline Huffman Decoding procedures

The baseline decoding procedure is for 8-bit sample precision. The decoder shall be capable of using up to two DC and two AC Huffman tables within one scan.

F.2.2.1 Huffman decoding of DC coefficients

The decoding procedure for the DC difference, DIFF, is:

T=DECODE DIFF=RECEIVE(T) DIFF=EXTEND(DIFF,T)

where DECODE is a procedure which returns the 8 bit value associated with the next Huffman code in the compressed image data (see F.2.2.3) and RECEIVE(T) is a procedure which places the next T bits of the serial bit string into the low order bits of DIFF, msb first. If T is zero, DIFF is set to zero. EXTEND is a procedure which converts the partially decoded DIFF value of precision T to the full precision difference. EXTEND is shown in Figure F.12.

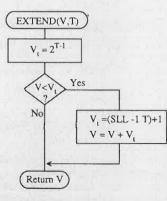


Figure F.12 - Extending the sign bit of a decoded value in V

F-22

0

F.2.2.2 Decoding procedure for AC coefficients

The decoding procedure for AC coefficients is shown in Figures F.13 and F.14,

463

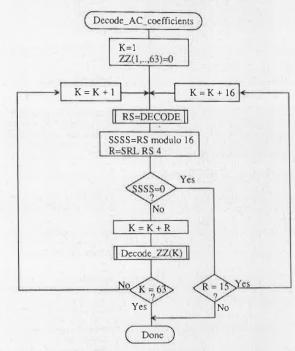


Figure F.13 - Huffman decoding procedure for AC coefficients

The decoding of the amplitude and sign of the nonzero coefficient is done in the procedure "Decode_ZZ(K)", shown in Figure F.14.

F-23

D

464

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

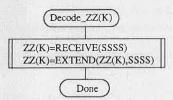


Figure F.14 - Decoding a nonzero AC coefficient

DECODE is a procedure which returns the value, RS, associated with the next Huffman code in the code stream (see F.2.2.3). The values SSSS and R are derived from RS. The value of SSSS is the four low order bits of the composite value and R contains the value of RRRR (the four high order bits of the composite value). The interpretation of these values is described in F.1.2.2. EXTEND is shown in Figure F.12.

F.2.2.3 The DECODE procedure

The DECODE procedure decodes an 8-bit value which, for the DC coefficient, determines the difference magnitude category. For the AC coefficient this 8-bit value determines the zero run length and nonzero coefficient category.

Three tables, HUFFVAL, HUFFCODE, and HUFFSIZE, have been defined in Annex C. This particular implementation of DECODE makes use of the ordering of the Huffman codes in HUFFCODE according to both value and code size. Many other implementations of DECODE are possible.

NOTE: The values in HUFFVAL are assigned to each code in HUFFCODE and HUFFSIZE in sequence. There are no ordering requirements for the values in HUFFVAL which have assigned codes of the same length.

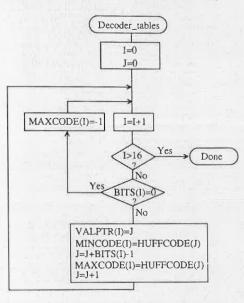
The implementation of DECODE described in this subclause uses three tables, MINCODE, MAXCODE and VALPTR, to decode a pointer to the HUFFVAL table. MINCODE, MAXCODE and VALPTR each have 16 entries, one for each possible code size. MINCODE(1) contains the smallest code value for a given length I, MAXCODE(1) contains the largest code value for a given length I, and VALPTR(1) contains the index to the start of the list of values in HUFFVAL which are decoded by code words of length I. The values in MINCODE and MAXCODE are signed 16 bit integers; therefore, a value of -1 sets all of the bits.

The procedure for generating these tables is shown in Figure F.15.

F-24

ì

APPENDIX A. ISO DIS 10918-1. REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES



465



The procedure for DECODE is shown in Figure F.16. Note that the 8-bit "VALUE" is returned to the procedure which invokes DECODE.

F-25

Q

U

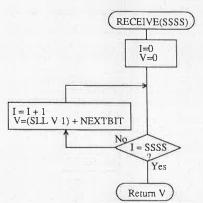
JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD 466 DECODE I=1CODE=NEXTBIT I=I+1 CODE=(SLL CODE 1) + NEXTBIT Yes CODE>MAXCODE(I) No J=VALPTR (I) J=J+CODE-MINCODE (I) VALUE=HUFFVAL (J) Return VALUE Figure F.16 - Procedure for DECODE F.2.2.4 The RECEIVE procedure RECEIVE(SSSS) is a procedure which places the next SSSS bits of the entropy-coded segment into the low order bits of DIFF, MSB first. It calls NEXTBIT and it returns the value of DIFF to the calling procedure.

F-26

Q

ŝ.





467

Figure F.17 - Procedure for RECEIVE(SSSS)

F.2.2.5 The NEXTBIT procedure

NEXTBIT reads the next bit of compressed data and passes it to higher level routines. It also intercepts and removes stuff bytes and detects markers. NEXTBIT reads the bits of a byte starting with the MSB.

Before starting the decoding of a scan, and after processing a RST marker, CNT is cleared. The compressed data are read one byte at a time, using the procedure NEXTBYTE. Each time a byte, B, is read, CNT is set to 8.

F-27

Q

 \odot

468

0

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

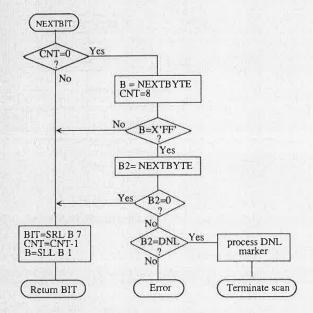


Figure F.18 - Procedure for fetching the next bit of compressed data

The only valid marker which may occur within the Huffman coded data is the RSTm marker. Other than the EOI or markers which may occur at or before the start of a scan, the only marker which can occur at the end of the scan is the DNL (define-number-of-lines).

Normally, the decoder will terminate the decoding at the end of the final restart interval before the terminating marker is intercepted. If the DNL marker is encountered, the current line count is set to the value specified by that marker. Since the DNL marker can only be used at the end of the first scan, the scan decode procedure must be terminated when it is encountered.

F.2.3 Sequential DCT decoding process with 8-bit precision extended to four sets of Huffman tables

This process is identical to the Baseline decoding process described in F.2.2, with the exception that the decoder shall be capable of using up to four DC and four AC Huffman tables within one scan. Four DC and four AC Huffman tables is the maximum allowed by this Specification.



F.2.4 Sequential DCT decoding process with arithmetic coding

This subclause describes the sequential DCT decoding process with arithmetic decoding.

The arithmetic decoding procedures for decoding binary decisions, initializing the statistics model, initializing the decoder, and resynchronizing the decoder are listed in Table D.3 of Annex D.

Some of the procedures in Table D.3 are used in the higher level control structure for scans and restart intervals described in F.2. At the beginning of scans and restart intervals, the probability estimates used in the arithmetic decoder are reset to the standard initial value as part of the Initdec procedure which restarts the arithmetic coder.

The statistical models defined in F.1.4.4 also apply to this decoding process.

The decoder shall be capable of using up to four DC and four AC conditioning tables and associated statistics areas within one scan.

F.2.4.1 Arithmetic decoding of DC coefficients

The basic structure of the decision sequence for decoding a DC difference value, DIFF, is shown in Figure F.19 The equivalent structure for the encoder is found in Figure F.4.

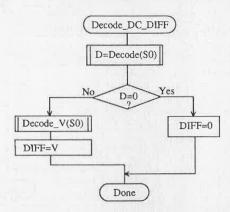


Figure F.19 - Arithmetic decoding of DC difference

The context-indices used in the DC decoding procedures are defined in Table F.4 (see F.1.4.4.1.3).

The "Decode" procedure returns the value "D" of the binary decision. If the value is not zero, the sign and magnitude of the nonzero DIFF must be decoded by the procedure "Decode_V(S0)".

0

O

F.2.4.2 Arithmetic Decoding of AC coefficients

470

The AC coefficients are decoded in the order that they occur in ZZ(1,...,63). The encoder procedure for the coding process is found in Figure F.5. Figure F.20 illustrates the decoding sequence.

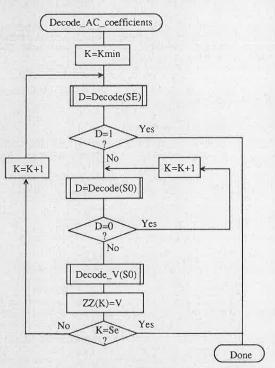


Figure F.20 - Procedure for decoding the AC coefficients

The context-indices used in the AC decoding procedures are defined in Table F.5 (see F.1.4.4.2).

In this Figure K is the index to the zig-zag sequence position. For the sequential scan, Kmin=1 and Se=63. The decision at the top of the loop is the EOB decision. If the EOB occurs (D=1), the remaining coefficients in the block are set to zero. The inner loop just below the EOB decoding decodes runs of zero coefficients. Whenever the coefficient is nonzero, "Decode_V" de-



codes the sign and magnitude of the coefficient. After each nonzero coefficient is decoded, the EOB decision is again decoded unless K=Se.

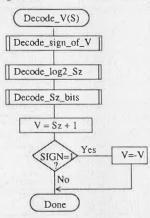
471

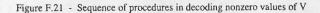
F.2.4.3 Decoding the binary decision sequence for nonzero DC differences and AC coefficients

Both the DC difference and the AC coefficients are represented as signed twos complement 16 bit integer values. The decoding decision tree for these signed integer values is the same for both the DC and AC coding models. Note, however, that the statistical models are not the same.

F.2.4.3.1 Arithmetic decoding of nonzero values

Denoting either DC differences or AC coefficients as V, the nonzero signed integer value of V is decoded by the sequence shown in Figure F.21. This sequence first decodes the sign of V. It then decodes the magnitude category of V (Decode_log2_Sz), and then decodes the low order magnitude bits (Decode_Sz_bits). Note that the value decoded for Sz must be incremented by 1 to get the actual coefficient magnitude.







υ

472

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

F.2.4.3.1.1 Decoding the sign

The sign is decoded by the following procedure:

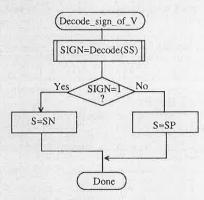
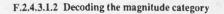


Figure F.22 - Decoding the sign of V

The context-indices are defined for DC decoding in Table F.4 and AC decoding in Table F.5.

If SIGN=0, the sign of the coefficient is positive; if SIGN=1, the sign of the coefficient is negative.

473



0

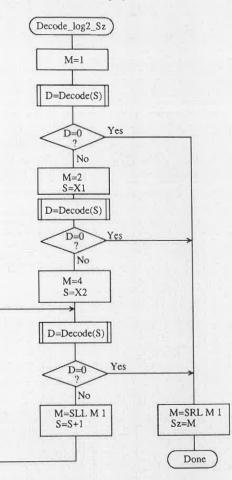


Figure F.23 - Decoding procedure to establish the magnitude category

The context-index S is set in Decode_sign_of_V and the context-index values X1 and X2 are defined for DC coding in Table F.4 and for AC coding in Table F.5.

In this figure, M set to the upper bound for the magnitude and shifted left until the decoded decision is zero. It is then shifted right by 1 to become the leading bit of the magnitude of Sz.

F.2.4.3.1.3 Decoding the exact value of the magnitude

474

After the magnitude category is decoded, the low order magnitude bits are decoded. These bits are decoded in order of decreasing bit significance. The procedure is shown in Figure F.24.

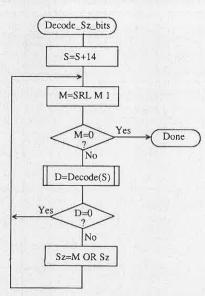


Figure F.24 - Decision sequence to decode the magnitude bit pattern

The context-index S is set in Decode_log2_Sz.

0

F.2.4.4 Decoder restart

The RSTm markers which are added to the compressed data between each restart interval have a two byte value which cannot be generated by the coding procedures. These two byte sequences can be located without decoding, and can therefore be used to resynchronize the decoder. RSTm markers can therefore be used for error recovery.

Before error recovery procedures can be invoked, the error condition must first be detected. Errors during decoding can show up in two places.

1)The decoder fails to find the expected marker at the point where it is expecting resynchronization.

2)Physically impossible data are decoded. For example, decoding a magnitude beyond the range of values allowed by the model is quite likely when the compressed data are corrupted by errors. For arithmetic decoders this error condition is extremely important to detect, as otherwise the decoder may reach a condition where it uses the compressed data very slowly.

Note that some errors will not cause the decoder to lose synchronization. In addition, recovery is not possible for all errors; for example, errors in the headers are likely to be catastrophic. The two error conditions listed above, however, almost always cause the decoder to lose synchronization in a way which permits recovery.

In regaining synchronization, the decoder can make use of the modulo 8 coding restart interval number in the low order bits of the RSTm marker. By comparing the expected restart interval number to the value in the next RSTm marker in the compressed image data, the decoder can usually recover synchronization. It then fills in missing lines in the output data by replication or some other suitable procedure, and continues decoding. Of course, the reconstructed image will usually be highly corrupted for at least a part of the restart interval where the error oc curred.

F.2.5 Sequential DCT decoding process with Huffman coding and 12-bit precision

This process is identical to the sequential DCT process defined for 8-bit sample precision and extended to four Huffman tables, as documented in F.2.3, but with the following changes.

F.2.5.1 Structure of DC Huffman decode table

The general structure of the DC Huffman decode table is extended as described in F.1.5.1

F.2.5.2 Structure of AC Huffman decode table

The general structure of the AC Huffman decode table is extended as described in F.1.5.2

F.2.6 Sequential DCT decoding process with arithmetic coding and 12-bit precision

The process is identical to the sequential DCT process for 8-bit precision except for changes in the precision of the IDCT computation.

The structure of the decoding procedure in F.2.4 is already defined for a 12-bit input precision.

Annex G (normative)

Progressive DCT-based mode of operation

This Annex provides a **functional specification** of the following coding processes for the progressive DCT-based mode of operation:

477

1) spectral-selection only, Huffman coding, 8-bit sample precision;

2) spectral-selection only, arithmetic coding, 8-bit sample precision;

3) full progression, Huffman coding, 8-bit sample precision;

4) full progression, arithmetic coding, 8-bit sample precision;

5) spectral-selection only, Huffman coding, 12-bit sample precision;

6) spectral-selection only, arithmetic coding, 12-bit sample precision;

7) full progression, Huffman coding, 12-bit sample precision;

8) full progression, arithmetic coding, 12-bit sample precision.

For each of these, the encoding process is specified in G.1, and the decoding process is specified in G.2. The functional specification is presented by means of specific flow charts for the various procedures which comprise these coding processes.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder which embodies one of the above-named processes shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

The number of Huffman or arithmetic conditioning tables which may be used within the same scan is four.

Two complementary progressive procedures are defined, spectral selection and successive approximation.

In spectral selection the DCT coefficients of each block are segmented into frequency bands. The bands are coded in separate scans.

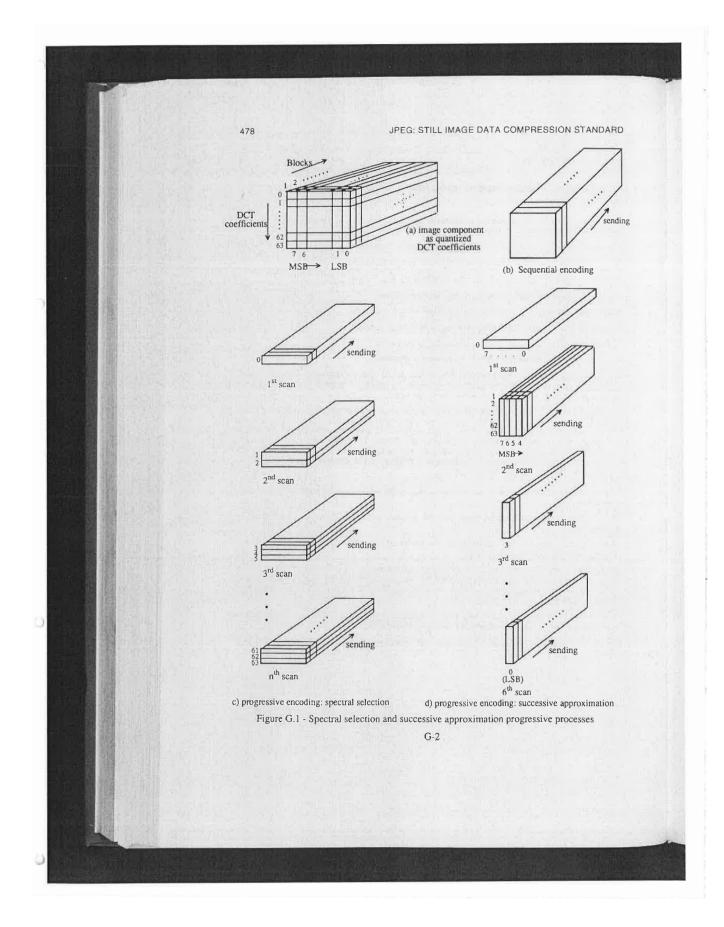
In successive approximation the DCT coefficients are divided by a power of two before coding. In the decoder the coefficients are multiplied by that same power of two before computing the IDCT. In the succeeding scans the precision of the coefficients is increased by one bit in each scan until full precision is reached.

An encoder or decoder implementing a full progression uses spectral selection within successive approximation. An allowed subset is spectral selection alone.

Figure G.1 illustrates the spectral selection and successive approximation progressive processes.

G-1

J



G.1 Progressive DCT-based encoding processes

G.1.1 Control procedures and coding models for progressive DCT-based procedures

G.1.1.1 Control procedures for progressive DCT-based encoders

The control procedures for encoding an image and its constituent parts - the frame, scan, restart interval and MCU - are given in Figures E.1 to E.5.

479

The control structure for encoding a frame is the same as for the sequential procedures. However, it is convenient to calculate the FDCT for the entire set of components in a frame before starting the scans. A buffer which is large enough to store all of the DCT coefficients may be used for this progressive mode of operation.

The number of scans is determined by the progression defined; the number of scans may be much larger than the number of components in the frame.

The procedure for encoding a MCU (Figure E.5) repetitively invokes the procedure for coding a data unit. For DCT-based encoders the data unit is an 8x8 block of samples.

Only a portion of each 8x8 block is coded in each scan, the portion being determined by the scan header parameters Ss, Se, Ah, and Al (see B.2.3). The procedures used to code portions of each 8x8 block are described in this annex. Note, however, that where these procedures are identical to those used in the sequential DCT-based mode of operation, the sequential procedures are simply referenced.

G.1.1.1.1 Spectral selection control

In spectral selection the zig-zag sequence of DCT coefficients is segmented into bands. A band is defined in the scan header by specifying the starting and ending indices in the zig-zag sequence. One band is coded in a given scan of the progression. DC coefficients are always coded separately from AC coefficients, and only scans which code DC coefficients may have interleaved blocks from more than one component. All other scans shall have only one component. With the exception of the first DC scans for the components, the sequence of bands defined in the scans need not follow the zig-zag ordering. For each component, a first DC scan shall precede any AC scans.

G.1.1.1.2 Successive approximation control

If successive approximation is used, the DCT coefficients are reduced in precision by the point transform (see A.4) defined in the scan header (see B.2.3). The successive approximation bit position parameter Al specifies the actual point transform, and the high four bits (Ah) - if there are preceding scans for the band - contain the value of the point transform used in those preceding scans. If there are no preceding scans for the band, Ah is zero.

Each scan which follows the first scan for a given band progressively improves the precision of the coefficients by one bit, until full precision is reached.



)

G.1.1.2 Coding models for progressive DCT-based encoders

480

If successive approximation is used, the DCT coefficients are reduced in precision by the point transform (see A.4) defined in the scan header (see B.2.3). These models also apply to the progressive DCT-based encoders, but with the following changes:

G.1.1.2.1 Progressive encoding model for DC coefficients

If Al is not zero, the point transform for DC coefficients shall be used to reduce the precision of the DC coefficients. If Ah is zero, the coefficient values (as modified by the point transform) shall be coded, using the procedure described in Annex F. If Ah is not zero, the least significant bit of the point transformed DC coefficients shall be coded, using the procedures described in this Annex.

G.1.1.2.2 Progressive encoding model for AC coefficients

If Al is not zero, the point transform for AC coefficients shall be used to reduce the precision of the AC coefficients. If Ah is zero, the coefficient values (as modified by the point transform) shall be coded using modifications of the procedures described in Annex F. These modifications are described in this Annex. If Ah is not zero, the precision of the coefficients shall be improved using the procedures described in this Annex.

G.1.2 Progressive encoding procedures with Huffman

G.1.2.1 Progressive encoding of DC coefficients with Huffman coding

The first scan for a given component shall encode the DC coefficient values using the procedures described in F.1.2.1. If the successive approximation bit position parameter Al is not zero, the coefficient values shall be reduced in precision by the point transform described in Annex A before coding.

In subsequent scans using successive approximation the least significant bits are appended to the compressed bit stream without compression or modification (see G.1.2.3), except for byte stuffing.

G.1.2.2 Progressive encoding of AC coefficients with Huffman coding

In spectral selection and in the first scan of successive approximation for a component, the AC coefficient coding model is similar to that used by the sequential procedures. However, the Huffman code tables are extended to include coding of runs of End-Of-Bands (EOBs).

The end-of-band run structure allows efficient coding of blocks which have only zero coefficients. An EOB run of length 5 means that the current block and the next four blocks have an end-of-band with no intervening nonzero coefficients. The EOB run length is limited only by the restart interval.

G-4

The extension of the code table is illustrated in Figure G.2.

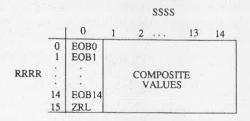


Figure G.2 - Two-dimensional value array for Huffman coding

481

The EOBn code sequence is defined as follows: Each EOBn code is followed by an extension field similar to the extension field for the coefficient amplitudes (but with positive numbers only). The number of bits appended to the EOBn code is the minimum number required to specify the run length.

Table G.1 EOBn code run length extensions

EOBn code	run length
EOB0	1
EOB1	2,3
EOB2	47
EOB3	815
EOB4	1631
EOB5	3263
EOB6	64127
EOB7	128255
EOB8	256511
EOB9	5121023
EOB10	10242047
EOB11	20484095
EOB12	40968191
EOB13	819216383
EOB14	163843276

If an EOB run is greater than 32767, it is coded as a sequence of EOB runs of length 32767 followed by a final EOB run sufficient to complete the run.

At the beginning of each restart interval the EOB run count, EOBRUN, is set to zero. At the end of each restart interval any remaining EOB run is coded.

The Huffman encoding procedure for AC coefficients in spectral selection and in the first scan of successive approximation is illustrated in Figures G.3 and G.4.



482 JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD Encode_AC_Coefficients_SS K=Ss-1 R=0 * K=K+1No ZZ(K) Yes Encode_EOBRUN R=R+1Yes K=Se No R<16 Yes No Encode_ZRL EOBRUN=EOBRUN+1 No EOBRUN=X'7FFF' Yes Encode_R_ZZ(K) Encode_EOBRUN K=Se No Yes Done Figure G.3 - Procedure for progressive encoding of AC coefficients with Huffman coding G-6

In the preceding figure, Ss is the start of spectral selection, Se is the end of spectral selection, K is the index into the list of coefficients stored in the zig-zag sequence ZZ, R is the run length of zero coefficients, and EOBRUN is the run length of EOBs. EOBRUN is set to zero at the start of each restart interval.

483

If the scan header parameter Al (successive approximation bit position low) is not zero, the DCT coefficient values ZZ(K) in Figure G.3 and figures which follow in this annex shall be replaced by the point transformed values ZZ'(K), where ZZ'(K) is defined by:

 $ZZ'(K) = \frac{ZZ(K)}{2^{A/2}}$

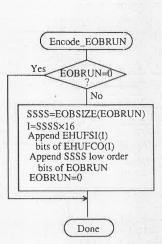
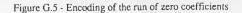


Figure G.4 - Progressive encoding of a nonzero AC coefficient





G-7

5

484

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

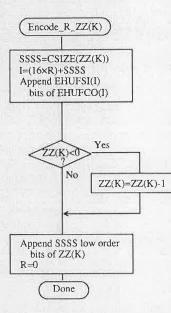


Figure G.6 - Encoding of the zero run and nonzero coefficient

EOBSIZE is a procedure which returns the size of the EOB extension field given the EOB run length as input. CSIZE is a procedure which maps an AC coefficient to the SSSS value defined in the subclauses on sequential encoding (F.1.1 and F.1.3).

G.1.2.3 Coding model for subsequent scans of successive approximation

The Huffman coding structure of the subsequent scans of successive approximation for a given component is similar to the coding structure of the first scan of that component.

The structure of the AC code table is identical to the structure described in sub-clause G.1.2.2. Each nonzero point transformed coefficient that has a zero history (i.e. that has a value ± 1 , and therefore has not been coded in a previous scan) is defined by a composite 8-bit run length-magnitude value of the form:

RRRRSSSS



The four most significant bits, RRRR, give the number of zero coefficients that are between the current coefficient and the previously coded coefficient (or the start of band). Coefficients with nonzero history (a nonzero value coded in a previous scan) are skipped over when counting the zero coefficients. The four least significant bits, SSSS, provide the magnitude category of the nonzero coefficient; for a given component the value of SSSS can only be one.

485

The run length-magnitude composite value is Huffman coded and each Huffman code is followed by additional bits:

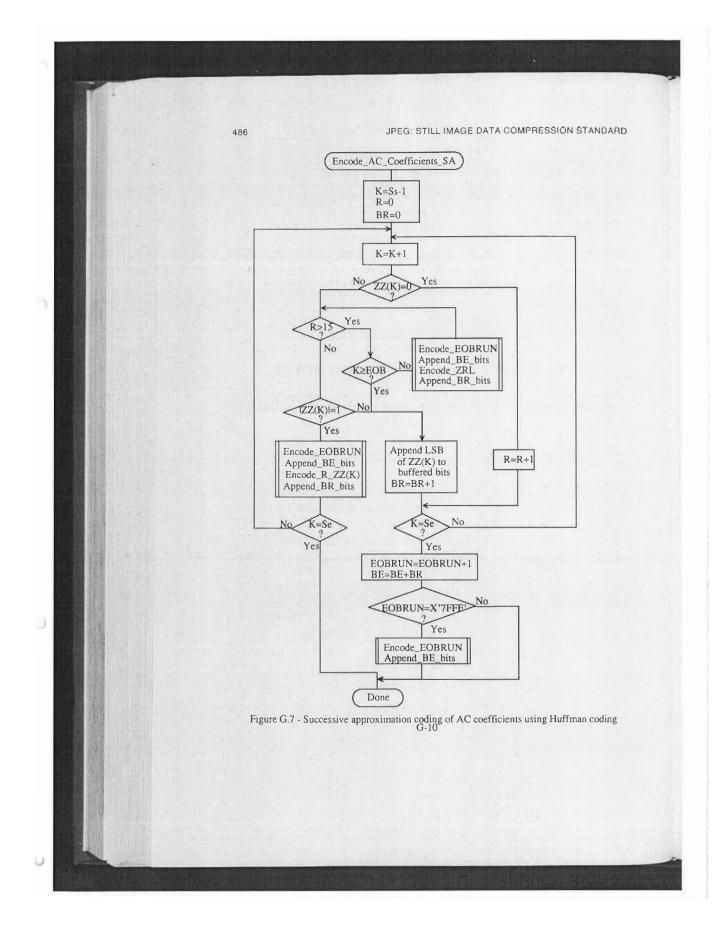
- 1) One bit codes the sign of the newly nonzero coefficient. A 0-bit codes a negative sign; a 1-bit codes a positive sign.
- 2) For each coefficient with a nonzero history, one bit is used to code the correction. A 0-bit means no correction and a 1-bit means that one shall be added to the (scaled) decoded magnitude of the coefficient.

Nonzero coefficients with zero history are coded with a composite code of the form:

HUFFCO(RRRRSSSS) + additional bit (rule 1) + correction bit (rule 2)

In addition whenever zero runs are coded with ZRL or EOBn codes, correction bits for those coefficients with nonzero history contained within the zero run are appended according to rule 2 above.

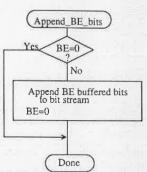
G-9

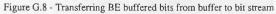


487

For the Huffman coding version of Encode_AC_Coefficients_SA the EOB is defined to be the position of the last point transformed coefficient of magnitude 1 in the band. If there are no coefficients of magnitude 1, the EOB is defined to be zero.

Note: the definition of EOB is different for Huffman and arithmetic coding procedures.





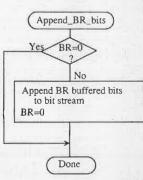


Figure G.9 - Transferring BR buffered bits from buffer to bit stream

In Figures G.7 and G.8 BE is the count of buffered correction bits at the start of coding of the block. BE is initialized to zero at the start of each restart interval. At the end of each restart interval any remaining buffered bits are appended to the bit stream following the last EOBn Huffman code and associated appended bits.



)

In Figures G.7 and G.9 BR is the count of buffered correction bits which are appended to the bit stream according to rule 2. BR is set to zero at the beginning of each Encode_AC_Coefficients_SA. At the end of each restart interval any remaining buffered bits are appended to the bit stream following the last Huffman code and associated appended bits.

G.1.3 Progressive encoding procedures with arithmetic coding

G.1.3.1 Progressive encoding of DC coefficients with arithmetic coding

The first scan for a given component shall encode the DC coefficient values using the procedures described in F.1.3.1. If the successive approximation bit position parameter is not zero, the coefficient values shall be reduced in precision by the point transform described in Annex A before coding.

In subsequent scans using successive approximation the least significant bits shall be coded as binary decisions using a fixed probability estimate of 0.5 (Qe=X'5A1D', MPS=0).

G.1.3.2 Progressive encoding of AC coefficients with arithmetic coding

Except for the point transform scaling of the DCT coefficients and the grouping the coefficients into bands, the first scan(s) of successive approximation is identical to the sequential encoding procedure described in F.1.4. If Kmin is equated to Ss, the index of the first AC coefficient index in the band, the flow chart shown in Figure F.4 applies. The EOB decision in that figure refers to the "end-of-band" rather than the "end-of-block". For the arithmetic coding version of Encode_AC_Coefficients_SA (and all other AC coefficient coding procedures) the EOB is defined to be the position following the last nonzero coefficient in the band.

Note: the definition of EOB is different for Huffman and arithmetic coding procedures.

The statistical model described in F.1.4 also holds. For this model the default value of Kx is 5. Other values of Kx may be specified using the DAC marker code (Annex B). The following calculation for Kx has proven to give good results for 8 bit precision samples:

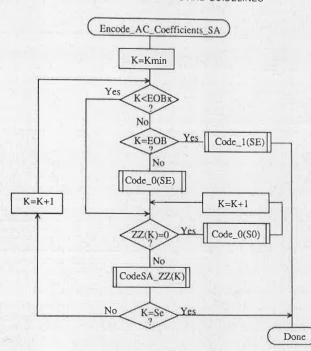
Kx = Kmin + SRL (8 + Se - Kmin) 4

This expression reduces to the default of Kx=5 when the band is from index 1 to index 63.

G.1.3.3 Coding model for subsequent scans of successive approximation

The procedure "Encode_AC_Coefficient_SA" shown in Figure G.10 increases the precision of the AC coefficient values in the band by one bit.





489

Figure G.10 - Subsequent successive approximation scans for coding of AC coefficients using arithmetic coding

As in the first scan of successive approximation for a component, an EOB decision is coded at the start of the band and after each nonzero coefficient.

However, since the end-of-band index of the previous successive approximation scan for a given component, EOBx, is known from the data coded in the prior scan of that component, this decision is bypassed whenever the current index, K, is less than EOBx. As in the first scan(s), the EOB decision is also bypassed whenever the last coefficient in the band is not zero. The decision ZZ(K)=0 decodes runs of zero coefficients. If the decoder is at this step of the procedure, at least one nonzero coefficient remains in the band of the block being coded. If ZZ(K) is not zero, the procedure in Figure G.11 is followed to code the value.



Page 188

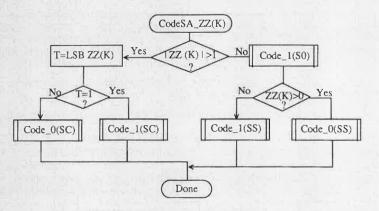


Figure G.11 - Coding nonzero coefficients for subsequent successive approximation scans

The context-indices in Figures G.10 and G.11 are defined in Table G.2 (see G.1.3.3.1). The signs of coefficients with magnitude of one are coded with a fixed probability value of 0.5 (Qe=X'5A1D', mps=0).

G.1.3.3.1 Statistical model for subsequent successive approximation scans

As shown in Table G.2, each statistics area for subsequent successive approximation scans of AC coefficients consists of a contiguous set of 189 statistics bins. The signs of coefficients with magnitude of one are coded with a fixed probability value of 0.5 (Qe=X'5A1D', mps=0).

Table G.2 Statistical model for subsequent scans of successive approximation coding of AC coefficients

Context-index	AC coding	Coding decision
SE	3×(K-1)	K=EOB
S0	SE+1	V=0
SS	fixed estimate	sign
SC	S0+1	LSB ZZ(K)=1

G.2 Progressive decoding of the DCT

490

The description of the computation of the IDCT and the dequantization procedure contained in A.3.3 and A.3.4 apply to the progressive operation.

Progressive decoding processes must be able to decompress compressed image data which requires up to four sets of Huffman or arithmetic coder conditioning tables within a scan.

In order to avoid repetition, detailed flow diagrams of progressive decoder operation are not included. Decoder operation is defined by reversing the function of each step described in the encoder flow charts, and performing the steps in reverse order.

G-14

Annex H (normative)

Lossless mode of operation

This Annex provides a functional specification of the following coding processes for the lossless mode of operation:

1) lossless processes with Huffman coding;

2) lossless processes with arithmetic coding.

For each of these, the encoding process is specified in H.1, and the decoding process is specified in H.2. The functional specification is presented by means of specific procedures which comprise these coding processes.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder which embodies one of the above-named processes shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

The processes which provide for sequential lossless encoding and decoding are not based on the DCT. The processes used are spatial processes based on the coding model developed for the DC coefficients of the DCT. However, the model is extended by incorporating a set of selectable one and two dimensional predictors, and for interleaved data the ordering of samples for the one-dimensional predictor can be different from that used in the DCT-based processes.

Either Huffman coding or arithmetic coding entropy coding may be employed for these lossless encoding and decoding processes. The Huffman code table structure is extended to allow up to 16-bit precision for the input data. The arithmetic coder statistical model is extended to a two-dimensional form.

H.1 Lossless encoder processes

H.1.1 Lossless encoder control procedures

E.1 contains the encoder control procedures. In applying these procedures to the lossless encoder, the data unit is one sample.

Input data precision may be from 2 to 16 bits/sample. If the input data path has different precision from the input data, the data should always be aligned with the least significant bits of the input data path. Input data is represented as unsigned integers and is not level shifted prior to coding.

When the encoder is reset in the restart interval control procedure (see E.1.4), the prediction is reset to a default value. If arithmetic coding is used, the statistics are also reset.

For the lossless processes the restart interval shall be an integer multiple of the number of MCU in an MCU row, and for interleaved data the ordering of samples for the one-dimensional predictor can be different.

H-1

Q

H.1.2 Coding model for lossless encoding

The coding model developed for encoding the DC coefficients of the DCT is extended to allow a selection from a set of seven one-dimensional and two-dimensional predictors. The predictor is selected in the scan header (see annex B). Each component in the scan is modeled independently, using predictions derived from neighboring samples of that component.

H.1.2.1 Prediction

492

Figure H.1 shows the relationship between the positions (a, b, c) of the reconstructed neighboring samples used for prediction and the position of x, the sample being coded.

in line	1 1	1	
	с	b	
	a	x	

Figure H.1 - Relationship between sample and prediction samples

Define Px to be the prediction and Ra, Rb, and Rc to be the reconstructed samples immediately to the left, immediately above, and diagonally to the left of the current sample. The allowed predictors, one of which is selected in the scan header, are listed in Table H.1

Table H.1	Predictors	for	lossless	coding

Selection-value Prediction

0	no prediction (See Annex J)
1	Px = Ra
2	Px = Rb
3	Px = Rc
4	Px = Ra + Rb - Rc
5	Px = Ra + ((Rb - Rc)/2)
6	Px = Rb+((Ra-Rc)/2)
7	Px = (Ra+Rb)/2

Selection-value 0 shall only be used for differential coding in the hierarchical mode of operation. Selections 1, 2 and 3 are one-dimensional predictors and selections 4, 5, 6, and 7 are twodimensional predictors.

The one-dimensional horizontal predictor (prediction sample Ra) is used for the first line of samples at the start of the scan and at the beginning of each restart interval. The selected predictor is used for all other lines. The sample from the line above (prediction sample Rb) is used at the start of each line, except for the first line. At the beginning of the first line and at the beginning of each restart interval the prediction value of 2^{P-1} is used, where P is the input precision.



If the point transformation parameter (see A.4) is nonzero, the prediction value at the beginning of the first lines and the beginning of each restart interval is $2^{P(P_1)}$, where Pt is the value of the point transformation parameter.

Each prediction is calculated with full integer arithmetic precision, and without clamping of either underflow or overflow beyond the input precision bounds. For example, if Ra and Rb are both 16-bit integers, the sum is a 17-bit integer. After dividing the sum by 2 (predictor 7), the prediction is a 16-bit integer.

For simplicity of implementation, the divide by 2 in the prediction selections 5 and 6 of Table H.1 is done by an arithmetic-right-shift of the integer values.

The difference between the prediction value and the input is calculated modulo 2^{16} . In the decoder the difference is decoded and added, modulo 2^{16} , to the prediction.

H.1.2.2 Huffman coding of the modulo difference

SS

The Huffman coding procedures defined in Annex F for coding the DC coefficients are used to code the modulo 2^{10} differences. The table for DC coding contained in Tables F.1 and F.6 is extended by one additional entry. No extra bits are appended after SSSS=16 is encoded.

Table H.2. Difference categories for lossless Huffman coding

SSS	Difference values
0	0
1	-1,1
2	-3,-2,2,3
3	-74,47
4	-158,815
5	-3116,1631
6	-6332,3263
7	-12764,64127
8	-255128,128255
9	-511256,256511
10	-1023512,5121023
11	-20471024,10242047
12	-40952048,20484095
13	-81914096,40968191
14	-163838192,819216383
15	-3276716384,1638432767
16	32768

H-3

493

H.1.2.3 Arithmetic coding of the modulo difference

The statistical model defined for the DC coefficient arithmetic coding model (see F.1.4.4.1) is generalized to a two-dimensional form in which differences coded for the sample to the left and for the line above are used for conditioning.

H.1.2.3.1 Two-dimensional statistical model

The binary decisions are conditioned on the differences coded for the neighboring samples immediately above and immediately to the left from the same component. As in the coding of the DC coefficients, the differences are classified into 5 categories: zero(0), small positive (+S), small negative (-S), large positive (+L) and large negative (-L). The two independent difference categories combine to give 25 different conditioning states. Figure H.2 shows the twodimensional array of conditioning indices. For each of the 25 conditioning states probability estimates for four binary decisions are kept.

unreferice above (Dosidon L	ference above (position	n b	
-----------------------------	-------------------------	-----	--

	1	0	+S	-S	+L	-L
	0	0	4	8	12	16
difference	+S	20	24	28	32	36
to left (position a)	-S	40	44	48	52	56
	+L	60	64	68	72	76
	-L	80	84	88	92	96

Figure H.2 - 5x5 Conditioning array for two-dimensional statistical model

At the beginning of the scan and each restart interval the conditioning derived from the line above is set to zero for the first line of each component.

H.1.2.3.2 Assignment of statistical bins to the DC binary decision tree

Each statistics area for lossless coding consists of a contiguous set of 158 statistics bins. The first 100 bins consist of 25 sets of four bins selected by a context-index S0. The value of S0 is given by $L_Context(Da,Db)$, which provides a value of 0, 4, ..., 92 or 96, depending on the difference classifications of Da and Db (see H.1.2.3.1.). The value for S0 provided by $L_Context(Da,Db)$ is from the array in Figure H.2.

The remaining 58 bins consist of two sets of 29 bins, X1,...,X15,M2,...,M15, which are used to code magnitude category decisions and magnitude bits. The value of X1 is given by X1_Context(Db), which provides a value of 100 when Db is in the zero, small positive or small negative categories and a value of 129 when Db is in the large positive or large negative categories.



494

495

The assignment of statistical bins to the binary decision tree used for coding the difference is given in Table H.3.

Table H.3. Statistical model for lossless coding

Context-index	Value	Coding decision		
S0	L_Context(Da,Db)	V=0		
SS	S0+1	sign		
SP	S0+2	Sz<1 if V>0		
SN	S0+3	Sz<1 if V<0		
X1	X1_Context(Db)	Sz<2		
X2	X1+1	Sz<4		
X3	X1+2	Sz<8		
X15	X1+14	Sz<2 ¹⁵		
M2	X2+14	magnitude bits if Sz<4		
M3	X3+14	magnitude bits if Sz<8		
M15	X15+14	magnitude bits if Sz<2 ¹⁵		

H.1.2.3.3 Default conditioning bounds

The bounds, L and U, for determining the conditioning category have the default values L=0 and U=1. Other bounds may be set using the DAC (Define-Arithmetic-Conditioning) marker segment, as described in Annex B.

H.1.2.3.4 Initial conditions for statistical model

At the start of a scan and at each restart, all statistics bins are re-initialized to the standard default value described in Annex D.

H.2 Lossless decoder processes

Lossless decoders may employ either Huffman decoding or arithmetic decoding. They shall be capable of using up to four tables in a scan. Lossless decoders shall be able to decode encoded image source data with any input precision from 2 to 16 bits per sample.

H.2.1 Lossless decoder control procedures

Annex E.2 contains the decoder control procedures. In applying these procedures to the lossless decoder the data unit is one sample.

When the decoder is reset in the restart interval control procedure (see E.2.4) the prediction is reset to the same value used in the encoder (see H.1.2.1). If arithmetic coding is used, the statistics are also reset.

Restrictions on the restart interval are specified in H.1.1.

H-5

D

H.2.2 Coding model for lossless decoding

The predictor calculations defined in H.1.2 also apply to the lossless decoder processes.

The lossless decoders, decode the differences and add them, modules 2^{16} , to the predictions to create the output. The lossless decoders shall be able to interpret the point transform parameter, and if non zero, multiply the output of the lossless decoder by 2^{P_1} .

In order to avoid repetition, detailed flow charts of the lossless decoding procedures are omitted.

H-6

496

U

Annex J (normative)

Hierarchical mode of operation

This Annex provides a **functional specification** of the following coding processes for the hierarchical mode of operation:

497

For the first 12 processes listed in Table J.1 below, the last frame for a component may either be coded using the process defined for the previous frames in the image, or with the lossless sequential differential process (defined in this annex) which matches the entropy coding method of the previous frames in the image.

Table J.1: Coding processes for hierarchical mode

P	Type	Ec	Precision	Annex
1	Extended sequential	н	8	F, process 2
2	Extended sequential	Α	8	F, process 3
3	Extended sequential	H	12	F, process 4
4	Extended sequential	Α	12	F, process 5
5	Spectral selection only	Н	8	G, process 1
6	Spectral selection only	A	8	G, process 2
7	Full progression	Н	8	G, process 3
8	Full progression	Α	8	G, process 4
9	Spectral selection only	Н	12	G, process 5
10	Spectral selection only	Α	12	G, process 6
11	Full progression	Н	12	G, process 7
12	Full progression	A	12	G, process 8
13	Lossless (DPCM)	Н	2 - 16	H, process 1
14	Lossless (DPCM)	Α	2 - 16	H, process 2

P=Process, Ec=Entropy coding, H=Huffman coding, A=Arithmetic coding.

NOTE: Baseline sequential is a subset of the extended sequential process. Therefore, it is not excluded from use in any of the above processes that specify extended sequential Huffman.

For each of these, the encoding processes is specified in J.1, and the decoding process is specified in J.2. The functional specification is presented by means of specific flow charts for the various procedures which comprise these coding processes.

NOTE - There is **no requirement** in this Specification that any encoder or decoder which embodies one of the above-named processes shall implement the procedures in precisely the manner specified by the flow charts in this Annex. It is necessary only that an encoder or decoder implement the **function** specified in this Annex. The sole criterion for an encoder or decoder to be considered in compliance with this Specification is that it satisfy the requirements given in clause 6 (for encoders) or clause 7 (for decoders), as determined by the compliance tests specified in Part 2.

In the hierarchical mode of operation each component is encoded or decoded in a nondifferential frame followed by a sequence of differential frames. A non-differential frame shall use the procedures defined in Annexes F, G, and H. Differential frame procedures are defined in this Annex.



J

J.1 Hierarchical encoding

498

J.1.1 Hierarchical control procedure for encoding an image

The control structure for encoding of an image using the hierarchical mode is given in Figure $J_{1,1}$.

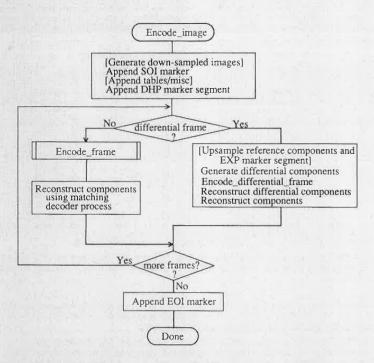


Figure J.1 - Hierarchical control procedure for encoding an image

In Figure J.1 procedures in brackets shall be performed whenever the particular hierarchical encoding sequence being followed requires them.

In the hierarchical mode the define-hierarchical-process (DHP) marker segment shall be placed in the compressed image data before the first start-of-frame. The DHP segment is used to signal the size of the image components of the completed image. The syntax of the DHP segment is specified in Annex B.



The first frame for each component or group of components in a hierarchical process shall be encoded by a non-differential frame. Differential frames shall then be used to encode the two's complement differences between source input components (possibly downsampled) and the reference components (possibly upsampled). The reference components are reconstruct components created by previous frames in the hierarchical process. For either differential or non-differential frames, reconstructions of the components shall be generated if needed as reference components for a subsequent frame in the hierarchical process.

499

Resolution changes may occur between hierarchical frames in a hierarchical process. These changes occur if down-sampling filters are used to reduce the spatial resolution of some or all of the components of the source image. When the resolution of a reference component does not match the resolution of the component input to a differential frame, an upsampling filter shall be used to increase the spatial resolution of the reference component. The EXP marker segment shall be added to the compressed image data before the start-of-frame whenever upsampling of a reference component is required. No more than one EXP marker segment shall precede a given frame.

Any of the markers segments allowed before a start-of-frame for the encoder process selected may be used before either non-differential or differential frames.

For 16 bit input precision (lossless encoder), the differential components which are input to a differential frame are calculated modulo 2^{16} . The reconstructed components calculated from the reconstructed differential components are also calculated modulo 2^{16} .

If a hierarchical encoder process uses a DCT encoder process for the first frame, all frames in the hierarchical process except for the final frame for each component shall use the DCT encoder processes defined in either Annex F or Annex G, or the modified DCT encoder processes defined in this Annex. The final frame may use a modified lossless process defined in this Annex.

If a hierarchical encoder process uses a lossless encoded process for the first frame, all frames in the hierarchical process shall use a lossless encoder process defined in Annex H, or a modified lossless process defined in this Annex.

J.1.1.1 Downsampling filter

The downsampled components are generated using a downsampling filter that is not specified in this Specification. This filter should, however, be consistent with the upsampling filter. An example of a downsampling filter is provided in K.5.

J.1.1.2 Upsampling filter

The upsampling filter increases the spatial resolution by a factor of two horizontally, vertically, or both. Bi-linear interpolation is used for the upsampling filter, as illustrated in Figure J.2.

a	x	b	a
			x
			b

Figure J.2 - Diagram of sample positions for upsampling rules

J-3

The rule for calculating the interpolated value is;

500

Px = (Ra+Rb)/2

where Ra and Rb are sample values from adjacent positions a and b of the lower resolution image and Px is the interpolated value. The division indicates truncation, not rounding. The leftmost column of the upsampled image matches the left-most column of the lower resolution image. The top row of the upsampled image matches the top row of the lower resolution image. The right column and the bottom row of the lower resolution image are replicated to provide the values required for the right column edge and bottom row interpolations. The upsampling process always doubles the line length or the number of rows.

If both horizontal and vertical expansions are signaled, they are done in sequence - first the horizontal expansion and then the vertical.

J.1.2 Control procedure for encoding a differential frame

The control procedures in Annex E for frames, scans, restart intervals and MCU also apply to the encoding of differential frames, and the scans, restart intervals and MCU from which the differential frame is constructed. The differential frames differ from the frames of Annexes F, G, and H only at the coding model level.

J.1.3 Encoder coding models for differential frames

The coding models defined in Annexes F, G, and H are modified to allow them to be used for coding of two's complement differences.

J.1.3.1 Modifications to encoder DCT encoding models for differential frames

Two modifications are made to the DCT coding models to allow them to be used in differential frames. First, the FDCT of the differential input is calculated without the level shift. Second, the DC coefficient of the DCT is coded directly - without prediction.

J.1.3.2 Modifications to lossless encoding models for differential frames

One modification is made to the lossless coding models. The difference is coded directly without prediction. The prediction selection parameter in the scan header shall be set to zero. The point transform which may be applied to the differential inputs is defined in Annex A.

J.1.4 Modifications to the entropy encoders for differential frames

The coding of two's complement differences requires one extra bit of precision for the Huffman coding of AC coefficients. The extension to Tables F.1 and F.7 is given in Table J.2

Table J.2 Modifications to table of AC coefficient amplitude ranges

SSSS	AC coefficients
15	-3276716384, 1638432767

J-4

The arithmetic coding models are already defined for the precision needed in differential frames.

501

J.2 Hierarchical decoding

J.2.1 Hierarchical control procedure for decoding an image The control structure for decoding an image using the hierarchical mode is given in Figure J.3.

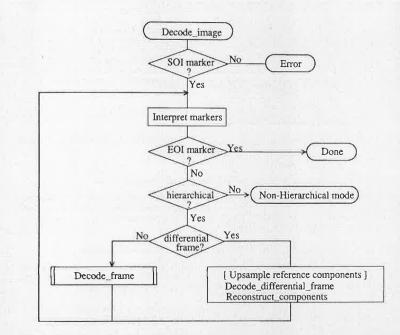


Figure J.3 - Hierarchical control procedure for decoding an image

The Interpret markers procedure shall decode the markers which may precede the SOF marker, continuing this decoding until either a SOF or EOI marker is found. If the DHP marker is encountered before the first frame, a flag is set which selects the hierarchical decoder at the "hierarchical?" decision point. In addition to the DHP marker (which shall precede any SOF) and

J-5

D

the EXP marker (which shall precede any differential SOF requiring resolution changes in the reference components), any other markers which may precede a SOF shall be interpreted to the extent required for decoding of the compressed image data.

If a differential SOF marker is found, the differential frame path is followed. If the EXP was encountered in the Interpret markers procedure, the reference components for the frame shall be upsampled as required by the parameters in the EXP segment. The upsampling procedure described in J.1.2 shall be followed.

The Decode_differential_frame procedure generates a set of differential components. These differential components shall be added, modulo 2¹⁶, to the upsampled reference components in the Reconstruct_components procedure. This creates a new set of reference components which shall be used when required in subsequent frames of the hierarchical process.

J.2.2 Control procedure for decoding a differential frame

The control procedures in Annex E for frames, scans, restart intervals and MCU also apply to the decoding of differential frames and the scans, restart intervals and MCU from which the differential frame is constructed. The differential frame differs from the frames of Annexes F, G, and H only at the decoder coding model level.

J.2.3 Decoder coding models for differential frames

The decoding models described in Annexes F, G, and H are modified to allow them to be used for decoding of two's complement differential components.

J.2.3.1 Modifications to the differential frame decoder DCT coding model

Two modifications are made to the decoder DCT coding models to allow them to code differential frames. First, the IDCT of the differential output is calculated without the level shift. Second, the DC coefficient of the DCT is decoded directly - without prediction.

J.2.3.2 Modifications to the differential frame decoded lossless coding model

One modification is made to the lossless decoder coding model. The difference is decoded directly - without prediction. If the point transformation parameter in the scan header is not zero, the point transform, defined in Annex A, shall be applied to the differential output.

J.2.4 Modifications to the entropy decoders for differential frames

The decoding of two's complement differences requires one extra bit of precision in the Huffman code table. This is described in J.1.4. The arithmetic coding models are already defined for the precision needed in differential frames.

J-6

Э

Annex K (informative)

Examples and guidelines

This annex provides examples of various tables, procedures, and other guidelines.

K.1 Quantization tables for luminance and chrominance components

Two examples of quantization tables are given in tables K.1 and K.2. These are based on psychovisual thresholding and are derived empirically using luminance and chrominance and 2:1 horizontal subsampling. These tables are provided as examples only and are not necessarily suitable for any particular application. These quantization values have been used with good results on 8 bit per sample luminance and chrominance images of the format illustrated in Figure 13. Note that these quantization values are appropriate for the DCT normalization defined in A.3.3.

Table K.1 Luminance quantization table

503

16 12 14 14 18 24 49 72	11 12 13 17 22 35 64 92	10 14 16 22 37 55 78 95	16 19 24 29 56 64 87 98	24 26 40 51 68 81 103 112	40 58 57 87 109 104 121 100	51 60 69 80 103 113 120 103	61 55 56 62 77 92 101 99
Tabl	e K.2	Chro	omina	nce q	uantiz	ation	table
17 18 24 47 99 99 99	18 21 26 66 99 99 99 99	24 26 56 99 99 99 99 99	47 66 99 99 99 99 99 99	99 99 99 99 99 99 99	99 99 99 99 99 99 99	99 99 99 99 99 99 99	99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99

If these quantization values are divided by 2, the resulting reconstructed image is usually nearly indistinguishable from the source image.

K.2 A procedure for generating the lists which specify a Huffman code table

A Huffman table is generated from a collection of statistics in two steps. The first step is the generation of the list of lengths and values which are in accord with the rules for generating the Huffman code tables. The second step is the generation of the Huffman code table from the list of lengths and values.

The first step, the topic of this section, is needed only for custom Huffman table generation and is done only in the encoder. In this step the statistics are used to create a table associating each value to be coded with the size (in bits) of the corresponding Huffman code. This table is sorted by code size.

A procedure for creating a Huffman table for a set of up to 256 symbols is shown in Figure K.1. Three vectors are defined for this procedure:

FREQ(V)	frequency of occurrence of symbol V.
CODESIZE	V) code size of symbol V.
OTHERS(V	

where V goes from 0 to 256.

504

Before starting the procedure, the values of FREQ are collected for V=0 to 255 and the FREQ value for V=256 is set to 1 to reserve one code point. FREQ values for unused symbols are defined to be zero. In addition, the entries in CODESIZE are all set to 0, and the indices in OTHERS are set to -1, the value which terminates a chain of indices. Reserving one code point guarantees that no code word can ever be all '1' bits.

505

The search for the entry with the least value of FREQ(V) selects the largest value of V with the least value of FREQ(V) greater than zero.

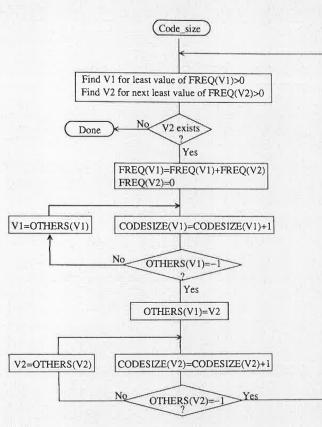


Figure K.1 - Procedure to find Huffman code sizes

The procedure "Find V1 for least value of FREQ(V1)>0" always selects the value with the largest value of V1 when more than one V1 with the same frequency occurs. The reserved code point is then guaranteed to be in the longest code word category.

K-3

Ų

Once the code lengths for each symbol have been obtained, the number of codes of each length is obtained using the procedure in Figure K.2. The count for each size is contained in the list, BITS. The counts in BITS are zero at the start of the procedure. The procedure assumes that the probabilities are large enough that code lengths greater than 32 bits never occur. Note that until the final Adjust_BITS procedure is complete, BITS may have more than the 16 entries required in the table specification (Annex C)

506

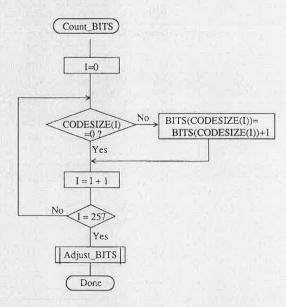


Figure K. 2 - Procedure to find the number of codes of each size

Figure K.3 gives the procedure for adjusting the BITS list so that no code is longer than 16 bits. Since symbols are paired for the longest Huffman code, the symbols are removed from this length category two at a time. The prefix for the pair (which is one bit shorter) is allocated to one of the pair, then (skipping the BITS entry for that prefix length) a code word from the next shortest nonzero BITS entry is converted into a prefix for two code words one bit longer. After the BITS list is reduced to a maximum code length of 16 bits, the last step removes the reserved code point from the code length count.

507

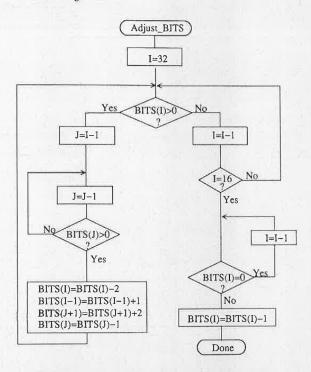


Figure K.3 - Procedure for limiting code lengths to 16 bits

The input values are sorted according to code size as shown in Figure K.4. HUFFVAL is the list containing the input values associated with each code word, in order of increasing code length.

508

0

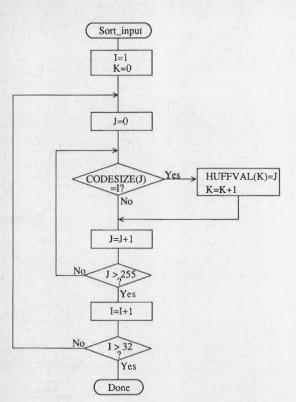


Figure K.4 - Sorting of input values according to code size

At this point, the list of code lengths (BITS) and the list of values (HUFFVAL) can be used to generate the code tables. These procedures are described in Annex C.

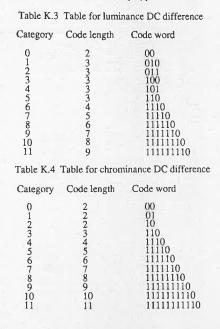
K.3 Typical Huffman tables for 8-bit precision luminance and chrominance

509

Huffman table-specification syntax is specified in B.2.4.2.

K.3.1 Typical Huffman tables for the DC coefficients

Tables K.3 and K.4 give Huffman tables which have been developed from the average statistics of a large set of video images with 8 bit precision. Table K.3 is appropriate for luminance components and Table K.4 is appropriate for chrominance components. Although there are no default tables, these tables may prove to be useful for many applications.



K.3.2 Typical Huffman tables for the AC coefficients

Tables K.5 and K.6 give Huffman tables for the AC coefficients which have been developed from the average statistics of a large set of images with 8 bit precision. Table K.5 is appropriate for luminance components and Table K.6 is appropriate for chrominance components. Although there are no default tables, these tables may prove to be useful for many applications.

Table K.5 Table for luminance AC coefficients

510

0

Run/Size	Code length	Code word
0/0 (EC)B) 4	1010
0/1	2	00
0/2	2	01
0/3	3	100
0/4	4	1011
0/5	5	11010
0/6	7	1111000
0/7	8	11111000
0/8	10	1111110110
0/9	16	1111111110000010
0/A	16	1111111110000011
1/1	4	1100
1/2	5	11011
1/3	7	1111001
1/4	9	111110110
1/5	11	11111110110
1/6	16	1111111110000100
1/7	16	1111111110000101
1/8	16	1111111110000110
1/9	16	1111111110000111
1/A	16	1111111110001000
2/1	5	11100
2/2	8	11111001
2/3	10	1111110111
2/4	12	111111110100
2/5	16	1111111110001001
2/6	16	1111111110001010
2/7 2/8	16	1111111110001011 1111111110001100
2/8	16 16	1111111110001100
2/9 2/A	16	111111110001101
3/1	6	111010
3/1	9	111110111
3/2	12	1111111110101
3/3	16	1111111110001111
3/5	16	111111110010000
3/6	16	111111110010000
3/7	16	1111111110010001
3/8	16	1111111110010010
3/9	16	1111111110010011
3/A	16	111111110010101
4/1	6	111011
	v	

ĥ

4/2	10	1111111000	
4/3	16	1111111100101110	
4/4	16	1111111110010111	
4/5	16	111111110011000	
4/6	16	1111111110011001	18
4/7	16	111111110011010	1.0
4/8	16	111111110011011	18
4/9	16	111111110011100	
4/A	16	111111110011101	
5/1	7	1111010	
5/2	11	11111110111	
5/3	16	111111110011110	
5/4	16	111111110011111	
5/5	16	1111111110100000	
5/6	16	1111111110100001	
5/7	16	111111110100010	
5/8	16	111111110100011	
5/9	16	1111111110100100	
5/A	16	1111111110100101	
6/1	7	1111011	
6/2	12	111111110110	
6/3	16	1111111110100110	
6/4	16	1111111110100111	
6/5	16	1111111110101000 1111111110101001	
6/6	16 16	111111110101010	
6/7 6/8	16	1111111101010101	
6/9	16	1111111110101100	
6/A	16	1111111110101101	
7/1	8	11111010	
7/2	12	11111110111	
7/3	16	111111110101110	
7/4	16	1111111101011111	
7/5	16	1111111110110000	
7/6	16	1111111110110001	
7/7	16	111111110110010	
7/8	16	1111111110110011	
7/9	16	1111111110110100	
7/A	16	1111111110110101	
8/1	9	111111000	
8/2	15	11111111000000	
8/3	16	1111111110110110	
8/4	16	1111111110110111	
8/5	16	1111111110111000	
8/6	16	1111111110111001	
8/7	16	1111111110111010	
		K-9	

. .

U

8/8	16	1111111110111011
8/9	16	1111111110111100
8/A	16	1111111110111101
9/1	9	111111001
9/2	16	1111111110111110
9/3	16	1111111110111111
9/4	16	1111111111000000
9/5	16	1111111111000001
9/6	16	1111111111000010
9/7	16	1111111111000011
9/8	16	1111111111000100
9/9	16	1111111111000101
9/A	16	1111111111000110
A/1	9	111111010
A/2	16	1111111111000111
A/3	16	1111111111001000
A/4	16	1111111111001001
A/5	16	1111111111001010
A/6	16	1111111111001011
А/7	16	1111111111001100
A/8	16	1111111111001101
A/9	16	1111111111001110
A/A	16	1111111111001111
B/1	10	1111111001
B/2	-16	1111111111010000
B/3	16	1111111111010001
B/4	16	1111111111010010
B/5	16	1111111111010011
B/6	16	1111111111010100
B/7	16	1111111111010101
B/8	16	1111111111010110
B/9	16	11111111110101111
B/A C/1	16 10	1111111111011000
C/1 C/2		1111111010 111111111011001
C/2 C/3	16	
C/3 C/4	16 16	1111111111011010 1111111111011011
C/4 C/5	16	1111111111101101
C/6	16	11111111111011100
	16	1111111111101110
C/7 C/8	16	11111111111011110
C/9	16	11111111111100000
C/A	16	1111111111100000
D/1	10	111111111000
D/1 D/2	16	1111111111100010
D/2 D/3	16	1111111111100010
D/ 5	10	11111111100011

512

D/4	16	111111111100100
D/5	16	111111111100101
D/6	16	1111111111100110
D/7	16	111111111100111
D/8	16	1111111111101000
D/9	16	1111111111101001
D/A	16	1111111111101010
E/1	16	1111111111101011
E/2	16	1111111111101100
E/3	16	1111111111101101
E/4	16	1111111111101110
E/5	16	1111111111101111
E/6	16	1111111111110000
E/7	16	1111111111110001
E/8	16	1111111111110010
E/9	16	1111111111110011
E/A	16	1111111111110100
F/0 (ZRL)	11	11111111001
F/1	16	1111111111110101
F/2	16	1111111111110110
F/3	16	11111111111110111
F/4 —	16	11111111111111000
F/5	16	11111111111111001
F/6	16	11111111111111010
F/7	16	111111111111111111111111111111111111111
F/8	16	1111111111111100
F/9	16	11111111111111111101
F/A	16	111111111111111110

Table K.6 Table for chrominance AC coefficients

513

Run/Size	Code length	Code word
0/0 (EOB) 2	00
0/1	2	01
0/2	3	100
0/3	4	1010
0/4	5	11000
0/5	5	11001
0/6	6	111000
0/7	7	1111000
0/8	9	111110100
0/9	10	1111110110
0/A	12	111111110100
1/1	4	1011

K-11

÷.

÷

.

514

-

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

1/2	6	111001
1/3	8	11110110
1/4	9	111110101
1/5	11	1111110110
1/6	12	11111110101
1/7	16	1111111110001000
1/8	16	1111111110001001
1/9	16	1111111110001010
1/A	16	1111111110001011
2/1	5	11010
2/2	8	11110111
2/3	10	1111110111
2/4	12	11111110110
2/5	15	111111111000010
2/6	16	1111111110001100
2/7	16	1111111110001101
2/8	16	1111111110001110
2/9	16	11111111100011111
2/A	16	1111111110010000
3/1	5	11011
3/2	8	11111000
3/3	10	1111111000
3/4	12	111111110111
3/5	16	1111111110010001
3/6	16	1111111110010010
3/7	16	1111111110010011
3/8	16	1111111110010100
3/9	16	1111111110010101
3/A	16	1111111110010110
4/1	6	111010
4/2	9	111110110
4/3	16	1111111100101111
4/4	16	1111111110011000
4/5	16	1111111110011001
4/6	16	111111110011010
4/7	16	1111111110011011
4/8	16	1111111110011100
4/9	16	1111111110011101
4/A	16	1111111110011110
5/1	6	111011
5/2	10	1111111001
5/3	16	111111110011111
5/4	16	1111111110100000
5/5	16	1111111110100001
5/6	16	1111111110100010
5/7	16	1111111110100011

515

5/8	16	1111111110100100
5/9	16	1111111110100101
5/A	16	1111111110100110
6/1	7	1111001
6/2	11	11111110111
6/3	16	1111111110100111
6/4	16	1111111110101000
6/5	16	1111111110101001
6/6	16	1111111110101010
6/7	16	1111111110101011
6/8	16	1111111110101100
6/9	16	1111111110101101
6/A	16	1111111110101110
7/1	7	1111010
7/2	11	11111111000
7/3	16	1111111110101111
7/4	16	1111111110110000
7/5	16	1111111110110001
7/6	16	1111111110110010
7/7	16	1111111110110011
7/8	16	1111111110110100
7/9	16	1111111110110101
7/A	16	1111111110110110
8/1	8	11111001
8/2	16	1111111110110111
8/3	16	1111111110111000
8/4	16	1111111110111001
8/5	16	1111111110111010
8/6	16	1111111110111011
8/7	16	1111111110111100
8/8	16	1111111110111101
8/9	16	1111111110111110
8/A	16	1111111110111111
9/1	9	111110111
9/2	16	1111111111000000
9/3	16	1111111111000001
9/4	16	1111111111000010
9/5	16	1111111111000011
9/6	16	1111111111000100
9/7	16	1111111111000101
9/8	16	1111111111000110
9/9	16	1111111111000111
9/A	16	111111111001000
A/1	9	111111000
A/2	16	111111111001001
A/3	16	1111111111001010

K-13

.

-

4

	JPEG: ST	FILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARI
A/4	16	1111111111001011
A/5	16	111111111001100
A/6	16	111111111001101
A/7	16	111111111001110
A/8	16	111111111001111
A/9	16	1111111111010000
A/A	16	1111111111010001
B/1	9	111111001
B/2	16	111111111010010
B/3	16	111111111010011
B/4	16	1111111111010100
B/5	16	111111111010101
B/6	16	1111111111010110
B/7	16	111111111010111
B/8	16	1111111111011000
B/9	16	1111111111011001
B/A	16	111111111011010
C/1	9	111111010
C/2	16	1111111111011011
C/3	16	111111111011100
C/4	16	1111111111011101
C/5	16	1111111111011110
C/6	16	111111111011111
C/7	16	111111111100000
C/8	16	111111111100001
C/9	16	1111111111100010
C/A	16	111111111100011
D/1	11	1111111001
D/2	16	1111111111100100
D/3	16	111111111100101
D/4	16	111111111100110
D/5	16	111111111100111
D/6	16	111111111101000
D/7	16	111111111101001
D/8	16	111111111101010
D/9	16	111111111101011
D/A	16	111111111101100
E/1	14	11111111100000
E/2	16	111111111101101
E/3	16	111111111101110
E/4	16	111111111101111
E/5	16	111111111110000
E/6	16	111111111110001
E/0 E/7	16	111111111110010
E/8	16	111111111110011
E/9	16	111111111111000

516

.

APPENDIX A.	ISO DIS 10918-1. REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES	
-------------	--	--

517

E/A	16	1111111111110101
F/0 (ZRL)	10	1111111010
F/1	15	11111111000011
F/2	16	1111111111110110
F/3	16	1111111111110111
F/4	16	1111111111111000
F/5	16	1111111111111001
F/6	16	1111111111111010
F/7	16	111111111111111011
F/8	16	1111111111111100
F/9	16	11111111111111101
F/A	16	1111111111111111

K.3.3 Huffman table-specification examples

K.3.3.1 Specification of typical tables for DC difference coding

A set of typical tables for DC component coding is given in K.3.1. The specification of these table is as follows:

For Table K.3 (for luminance DC coefficients), the 16 bytes which specify the list of code lengths for the table are:

X'00 01 05 01 01 01 01 01 01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00'

The set of values following this list is:

X'00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0A 0B'

For Table K.4 (for chrominance DC coefficients), the 16 bytes which specify the list of code lengths for the table are:

The set of values following this list is:

.

X'00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0A 0B'

K.3.3.2 Specification of typical tables for AC coefficient coding

.....

A set of typical tables for AC component coding is given in K.3.2. The specification of these tables is as follows:

For Table K.5 (for luminance AC coefficients), the 16 bytes which specify the list of code lengths for the table are:

X'00 02 01 03 03 02 04 03 05 05 04 04 00 00 01 7D'

K-15

1

Page 216

The set of values which follows this list is:

518

X'01	02	03	00	04	11	05	12	21	31	41	06	13	51	61	07	
22	71	14	32	81	91	A1	08	23	42	B1	C1	15	52	D1	F0	
24	33	62	72	82	09	0A	16	17	18	19	1A	25	26	27	28	
29	2A	34	35	36	37	38	39	3A	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	
4A	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	5A	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	
6A	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	7A		84	85	86	87	88	89	
8A	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	9A	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	
A8	A9	AA	B2	B3	B4	B5		B7		B9	BA	C2	C3	C4	C5	
C6	C7	C8	C9	CA	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	DA	E1	E2	
E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	EA	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	
F9	FA'															

For Table K.6 (for chrominance AC coefficients), the 16 bytes which specify the list of code lengths for the table are:

X'00 02 01 02 04 04 03 04 07 05 04 04 00 01 02 77'

The set of values which follows this list is:

X'00 01 02 03 05 21 31 06 12 41 51 07 61 71 11 04 13 22 32 81 08 14 42 91 A1 B1C1 09 23 33 52 F0 E1 **F**1 17 18 19 72 0A 24 34 25 26 15 62 D1 16 1A 27 28 29 2A 35 36 37 38 39 3A 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4A 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 5A 63 64 65 66 67 68 79 83 69 6A 73 74 75 76 77 78 7A 82 84 85 86 87 88 89 8A 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 9A A2 A3 A4 A5 A7 AA B2 **B**5 B6 B9 C2 C3 B4 **B7 B**8 BA A6 A8 A9 **B**3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA D2 D3 D4 D5 D6 D7 D8 D9 DA E2 E3 E4 E5 E6 E7 E8 E9 EA F2 F3 F4 F5 F6 F8 F7 F9 FA

K.4 Additional information on arithmetic coding

K.4.1 Test sequence for a small data set for the arithmetic coder

The following 256 bit test sequence (in hexadecimal form) is structured to test many of the encoder and decoder paths:

X'00020051 000000C0 0352872A AAAAAAAA 82C02000 FCD79EF6 74EAABF7 697EE74C'

Tables K.7 and K.8 provide a symbol-by-symbol list of the arithmetic encoder and decoder operation. In these tables the event count, EC, is listed first, followed by the value of Qe used in encoding and decoding that event. The decision D to be encoded (and decoded) is listed next. The column labeled MPS contains the sense of the MPS, and if it is followed by an X (in the

"X" column), the conditional MPS/LPS exchange occurs when encoding and decoding the decision (see Figures D.3, D.4 and D.17). The contents of the A and C registers are the values before the event is encoded and decoded. SC is the number of X'FF' bytes stacked in the encoder waiting for a resolution of the carry-over. Note that the A register is always greater than X'7FFF'. (The starting value has an implied value of X'10000'.)

519

In the encoder test, the code bytes (B) are listed if they were completed during the coding of the preceding event. If additional bytes follow, they were also completed during the coding of the preceding event. If a byte is listed in the Bx column, the preceding byte in column B was modified by a carry-over.

In the decoder the code bytes are listed if they were placed in the code register just prior to the event EC.

For this file the coded bit count is 240, including the overhead to flush the final data from the C register. When the marker X'FFD9' is appended, a total of 256 bits are output. The actual compressed data sequence for the encoder is (in hexadecimal form):

X'655B5144 F7969D51 7855BFFF 00FC5184 C7CEF939 00287D46 708ECBC0 F6FFD900'

Table K.7 Encoder test sequence

EC	D	MPS	х	Qe	А	С	CT	SC	Bx	В
1	0	0		5A1D	0000	00000000	11	0		
2	0	0	Х	5A1D	A5E3	0000000	= 11-	0		
3	0	0		2586	B43A	0000978C	10	0		
4	0	0		2586	8EB4	0000978C	10	0		
5	0	0		1114	D25C	00012F18	9	0		
6	0	0		1114	C148	00012F18	9	0		
7	0	0		1114	B034	00012F18	9	0		
8	0	0		1114	9F20	00012F18	9	0		
9	0	0		1114	8E0C	00012F18	9	0		
10	0	0		080B	F9F0	00025E30	8	0		
11	0	0		080B	F1E5	00025E30	8	0		
12	0	0		080B	E9DA	00025E30	8	0		
13	0	0		080B	E1CF	00025E30	8	0		
14	0	0		080B	D9C4	00025E30	8	0		
15	1	0		080B	D1B9	00025E30	8	0		
16	0	0		17B9	80B0	00327DE0	4	0		
17	0	0		1182	D1EE	0064FBC0	3	0		
18	0	0		1182	C06C	0064FBC0	3	0		
19	0	0		1182	AEEA	0064FBC0	3	0		
20	0	0		1182	9D68	0064FBC0	3	0		
21	0	0		1182	8BE6	0064FBC0	3	0		
22	0	0		0CEF	F4C8	00C9F780	2	0		
23	0	0		0CEF	E7D9	00C9F780	2	0		

K-17

1

U)

i.

520			J	PEG: STIL	L IMAGE DATA	COMPRES	SION	STANDARD
24	0	0	0CEF	DAEA	00C9F780	2	0	
25	0	0	0CEF	CDFB	00C9F780	2	Ő	
26	1	0	OCEF	C10C	00C9F780	2	0	
20	0	0	1518	CEF0	000AB9D0	6	Ő	65
28	1	0	1518	B9D8	000AB9D0	6	õ	0.5
29	0	0	1AA9	A8C0	005AF480	3	õ	
30	0	0	1AA9	8E17	005AF480	3	ŏ	
31	Ő	0	174E	E6DC	00B5E900	2	ŏ	
32	1	0	174E	CF8E	00B5E900	2	õ	
33	Ô	0	1449	BA70	00050A00	7	ŏ	5B
34	0	0	1AA9	9FC7	00050A00	7	õ	50
35	0	Õ	1AA9	851E	00050A00	7	Ő	
36	0	Ő	174E	D4EA	000A1400	6	Õ	
37	0	Ő	174E	BD9C	000A1400	6	Ő	
38	0	Ő	174E	A64E	000A1400	6	0	
39	õ	0	174E	8F00	000A1400	6	= 0	
40	Ő	0	1424	EF64	00142800	5	Ő	
41	0	0	1424	DB40	00142800	-5	0	
42	0	Ő	1424	C71C	00142800	5	Ő	
43	0	Ő	1424	B2F8	00142800	5	ŏ	
44	Ő	Ő	1424	9ED4	00142800	5	ŏ	
45	0	0	1424	8AB0	00142800	5	Ő	
46	0	0	119C	ED18	00285000	4	Ő	
47	0	Ő	119C	DB7C	00285000	4	ŏ	
48	0	0	119C	C9E0	00285000	4	Ö	
49	0	0	119C	B844	00285000	4	Ő	
50	0	0	119C	A6A8	00285000	4	0	
51	0	Ő	119C	950C	00285000	4	0	
52	Ő	Ő	119C	8370	00285000	4	0	
53	0	0	0F6B	E3A8	0050A000	3	0	
54	Ő	0	0F6B	D43D	0050A000	3	0	
55	Ő	0	0F6B	C4D2	0050A000	3	ŏ	
56	0	0	0F6B	B567	0050A000	3	0	
57	1	0	0F6B	A5FC	0050A000	3	Ő	
58	i	0	1424	F6B0	00036910	7	0	51
59	0	0	1AA9	A120	00225CE0	4	0	01
60	0	0	1AA9	8677	00225CE0	4	Ő	
61	0	Ő	174E	D79C	0044B9C0	3	Ő	
62	0	0	174E	C04E	0044B9C0	3	Ő	
63	0	0	174E	A900	0044B9C0	3	Ő	
64	0	0	174E	91B2	0044B9C0	3	Ő	
65	0	0	1424	F4C8	00897380	2	0	
66	0	0	1424	E0A4	00897380	2	0	
67	0	0	1424	CC80	00897380	2	0	
68	0	0	1424	B85C	00897380	2	0	
69	0	0	1424	A438	00897380	2	0	
0,	0	0	1727	11-100	50077500	2	v	

1

PEN		150	015 10	918-1. HEC	UREMEN	TS AND GUIDELI	NES		521
70	0	0		1424	9014	00897380	2	0	
71	1	0		119C	F7E0	0112E700	ĩ	0	
72	1	0		1424	8CE0	001E6A20	6	0	44
73	0	0		1AA9	A120	00F716E0	3	0	
74	1	0		1AA9	8677	00F716E0	3	0	
75	0	0		2516	D548	00041570	8	Ő	F7
76	1	0		2516	B032	00041570	8	0	
77	0	0		299A	9458	00128230	6	Ő	
78	0	0		2516	D57C	00250460	5	Õ	
79	1	0		2516	B066	00250460	5	0	
80	0	0		299A	9458	00963EC0	3	Ő	
81	1	0		2516	D57C	012C7D80	2	0	
82	Ô	õ		299A	9458	0004B798	8	0	96
83	õ	Ő		2516	D57C	00096F30	7	0	
84	õ	õ		2516	B066	00096F30	7	0	
85	õ	ŏ		2516	8B50	00096F30	7	0	
86	1	Ő		IEDF	CC74	0012DE60	6	0	
87	1	Ő		2516	F6F8	009C5FA8	3	0	
88	1	0		299A	9458	0274C628	1	õ	
89	0	0		32B4	A668	0004C398	7	0	9D'
90	0	Ő		2E17	E768	00098730	6	õ	10
91	1	0		2E17	B951	00098730	6	õ	
92	0	0		32B4	B951 B85C	002849A8	4	0	
92 93	1	0		32B4	85A8	002849A8	4	0	
95 94	0	0		3C3D	CAD0	00A27270	2	0	
94 95	1	0		3C3D	8E93	00A27270	2	0	
95 96	0	0		415E	F0F4	00031318	8	0	51
90 97	1	0		415E	AF96	00031318	8	0	51
97 98	0	0	х	4639	82BC	000702A0	7	ő	
90 99	1	0	<u>^</u>	4039 415E	8C72	000F7E46	6	0	
	0	0	х	4639	82BC	001D92B4	5	0	
100		0	л	4039 415E	8C72	003B9E6E	4	0	
101	1		х	413E	82BC	0077D304	3	0	
102 103	0 1	0	Λ	4039 415E	8C72	00F01F0E	2	0	
	-		х	4639	82BC	01E0D444	1	õ	
104	0	0	Λ	4039 415E	8C72	0002218E	8	0	78
105	1		х	413E 4639	8C72 82BC	0004D944	7	0	10
106	0	0	Λ		8C72	000A2B8E	6	0	
107	1	0	v	415E			5	0	
108	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	0014ED44 002A538E	4	0	
109	1	0		415E	8C72	002A538E 00553D44	4	0	
110	0	0	X	4639	82BC		2	0	
111	1	0		415E	8C72	00AAF38E	2	0	
112	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	01567D44	8	0	55
113	1	0		415E	8C72	0005738E		0	55
114	0	0	Х	4639	82BC 8C72	000B7D44 0017738E	7	0	

a.

ii.

÷.

ŝ.

522					JPEG: STI	LL IMAGE DATA	COMPRE	ESSION	STANDARD
116	0	0	х	4639	82BC	002F7D44	5	0	
117	1	0		415E	8C72	005F738E	4	0	
118	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	00BF7D44	3	0	
119	1	0		415E	8C72	017F738E	2	0	
120	0	0	X	4639	82BC	02FF7D44	1	0	
121	1	0		415E	8C72	0007738E	8	0	BF
122	0	0	х	4639	82BC	000F7D44	7	0	
123	1	0		415E	8C72	001F738E	6	0	
124	0	0	х	4639	82BC	003F7D44	5	0	
125	1	0		415E	8C72	007F738E	4	0	
126	0	0	X	4639	82BC	00FF7D44	3	0	
127	1	0		415E	8C72	01FF738E	2	0	
128	0	0	х	4639	82BC	03FF7D44	1	0	
129	1	0		415E	8C72	0007738E	8	1	
130	0	0	x	4639	82BC	000F7D44	7	1	
131	0	0		415E	8C72	001F738E	6	1	
132	0	0		3C3D	9628	003EE71C	5	1	
133	0	0		375E	B3D6	007DCE38	4	1	
134	0	0		32B4	F8F0	00FB9C70	3	1	
135	1	0		32B4	C63C	00FB9C70	3	1	
136	Ô	0		3C3D	CADO	03F0BFE0	1	1	
137	1	0		3C3D	8E93	03F0BFE0	1	1	
138	1	0		415E	F0F4	000448D8	7	0	FF00FC
139	0	0	х	4639	82BC	0009F0DC	6	0	FFOOrC
140	0	0	^	4039 415E	8C72	0009F0DC	5	0	
141	0	0		3C3D	9628	0028B57C	4	0	
142	0	0		375E	B3D6	0028B37C	3	0	
142	0	0		375E	F8F0	00A2D5F0	2	0	
144	0	0		32B4	C63C	00A2D5F0	2	0	
145	0	0		32B4	9388	00A2D5F0	2	0	
145	0	0		2E17	C1A8	0145ABE0	1	0	
140	1	0		2E17 2E17				0	
148	0	0		32B4	9391 B85C	0145ABE0	1 7	0	51
140	0	0		32B4 32B4	85A8	00084568	7	0	51
150	0	0		2E17	A5E8	00084568 00108AD0		0	
151	0	0					6		
151	0	0		299A	EFA2	002115A0	5	0	
	0			299A	C608	002115A0	5	0	
153		0		299A	9C6E	002115A0	5	0	
154	0	0		2516	E5A8	00422B40	4	0	
155	0	0		2516	C092	00422B40	4	0	
156	0	0		2516	9B7C	00422B40	4	0	
157	0	0		1EDF	ECCC	00845680	3	0	
158	0	0		1EDF	CDED	00845680	3	0	
159	0	0		1EDF	AFOE	00845680	3	0	
160	0	0		1EDF	902F	00845680	3	0	
161	1	0		1AA9	E2A0	0108AD00	2	0	

162	1	0		2516	D548	000BA7B8	7	0	84
163	1	0		299A	9458	00315FA8	5	Ō	
164	1	0		32B4	A668	00C72998	3	0	
165	1	0		3C3D	CAD0	031E7530	1	0	
166	1	0		415E	F0F4	000C0F0C	7	Ő	C7
167	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	00197D44	6	0	
168	0	0		415E	8C72	0033738E	5	0	
169	1	0		3C3D	9628	0066E71C	4	0	
170	1	0		415E	F0F4	019D041C	2	0	
171	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	033B6764	1	0	
172	1	0		415E	8C72	000747CE	8	0	CE
173	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	000F25C4	7	0	
174	1	0		415E	8C72	001EC48E	6	0	
175	1	0	х	4639	82BC	003E1F44	5	0	
176	1	0		4B85	F20C	00F87D10	3	0	
177	1	0	Х	504F	970A	01F2472E	2	0	
178	0	0	X	5522	8D76	03E48E5C	1	0	
179	0	0		504F	AA44	00018D60	8	0	F9
180	1	0		4B85	B3EA	00031AC0	7	0	
181	1	0	х	504F	970A	0007064A	6	0	
182	1	0	X	5522	8D76	000E0C94	5	0	
183	1	0		59EB	E150	00383250	3	0	
184	0			59EB	B3D6	0071736A	2	0	
185	1	0		59EB	B3D6	00E39AAA	1	0	
186	1	1		59EB	B3D6	0007E92A	8	0	38
187	1	1		5522	B3D6	000FD254	7	0	
188	1	1		504F	BD68	001FA4A8	6	0	
189	0	1		4B85	DA32	003F4950	5	0	
190	1	1	Х	504F	970A	007FAFFA	4	0	
191	1	1		4B85	A09E	00FFED6A	3	0	
192	0	1		4639	AA32	01FFDAD4	2	0	
193	0	1	Х	4B85	8C72	04007D9A	1	0	
194	1	1	Х	504F	81DA	0000FB34	8	0	39 00
195	1	1		4B85	A09E	0002597E	7	0	
196	1	1		4639	AA32	0004B2FC	6	0	
197	0	1		415E	C7F2	000965F8	5	0	
198	1	1	Х	4639	82BC	0013D918	4	0	
199	0	1		415E	8C72	00282B36	3	0	
200	0	1	Х	4639	82BC	0050EC94	2	0	
201	1	1		4B85	F20C	0003B250	8	0	28
202	1	1		4B85	A687	0003B250	8	0	
203	1	1		4639	B604	000764A0	7	0	
204	0	1		415E	DF96	000EC940	6	0	
205	1	1	x	4639	82BC	001ECEF0	5	0	
206	0	1		415E	8C72	003E16E6	4	0	
207	1	1	х	4639	82BC	007CC3F4	3	0	

K-21

4

1

.

.

524				J	PEG: STIL	L IMAGE DATA (COMPRES	SSION	STANDARD
					24.5		10.0		
208	0	1		415E	8C72	00FA00EE	2	0	
209	1	1	X	4639	82BC	01F49804	1	0	
210	0	1		415E	8C72	0001A90E	8	0	7D
211	1	1	X	4639	82BC	0003E844	7	0	
212	0	1		415E	8C72	0008498E	6	0	
213	1	1	X	4639	82BC	00112944	5	0	
214	0	1		415E	8C72	0022CB8E	4	0	
215	1	1	Х	4639	82BC	00462D44	3	0	
216	1	1		415E	8C72	008CD38E	2	0	
217	1	1		3C3D	9628	0119A71C	1	0	
218	1	1		375E	B3D6	00034E38	8	0	46
219	1	1		32B4	F8F0	00069C70	7	0	
220	1	1		32B4	C63C	00069C70	7	0	
221	0	1		32B4	9388	00069C70	7	0	
222	1	1		3C3D	CAD0	001BF510	5	0	
223	1	1		3C3D	8E93	001BF510	5	0	
224	1	1		375E	A4AC	0037EA20	4	0	
225	0	1		32B4	DA9C	006FD440	3	0	
226	1	1		3C3D	CAD0	01C1F0A0	1	0	
227	1	1		3C3D	8E93	01C1F0A0	1	0	
228	0	1		375E	A4AC	0003E140	8	Õ	70
229	1	i		3C3D	DD78	00113A38	6	0	,,,
230	0	î		3C3D	A13B	-00113A38	6	Ő	
231	0	1		415E	F0F4	00467CD8	4	0	
232	1	1	х	4639	82BC	008E58DC	3	0	
232	0	i	~	4055 415E	8C72	011D2ABE	2	0	
234	1	i	х	4639	82BC	023AEBA4	1	0	
235	1	1	Λ	4039 415E	8C72	0006504E	8	0	8E
236	1	1		3C3D	9628	000CA09C	7	0	0L
230	1	1		375E	B3D6	00194138	6	0	
238	1	1		373E 32B4	F8F0	00328270	5	0	
239	1	1		32B4	C63C	00328270	5	0	
239	0	1		32B4	9388	00328270	5	0	
240	1	1		3C3D				0	
241	1				CAD0	00CB8D10	3 3	-	
		1		3C3D	8E93	00CB8D10		0	
243	1	1		375E	A4AC	01971A20	2	0	
244	0	1		32B4	DA9C	032E3440	1	0	(DD)
245	0	1		3C3D	CAD0	000B70A0	7	0	CB
246	1	1		415E	F0F4	002FFCCC	5	0	
247	1	1		415E	AF96	002FFCCC	5	0	
248	1	1		3C3D	DC70	005FF998	4	0	
249	0	1		3C3D	A033	005FF998	4	0	
250	1	1		415E	F0F4	01817638	2	0	
251	0	1		415E	AF96	01817638	2	0	
252	0	1	х	4639	82BC	0303C8E0	1	0	
253	1	1		4B85	F20C	000F2380	7	0	C0

4

APPENDIX A. ISO DIS 10918-1. REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES 4B85 A687 B604 0 0 0 0 F6 FFD9 7 6 5 4 000F2380 001E4700 003D6D96 4639 1 X 4B85 8C72 flush: 81DA 007ADB2C

Table K.8 Decoder test sequence

525

EC	D	MPS	х	Qe	А	С	CT	В
1	0	0		5A1D	0000	655B0000	0	65 5B
2	0	0	X	5A1D	A5E3	655B0000	0	
3	0	0		2586	B43A	332AA200	7	51
4	0	0		2586	8EB4	332AA200	7	
5	0	0		1114	D25C	66554400	6	
6	0	0		1114	C148	66554400	6	
7	0	0		1114	B034	66554400	6	
8	0	0		1114	9F20	66554400	6	
9	0	0		1114	8E0C	66554400	6	
10	0	0		080B	F9F0	CCAA8800	5	
11	0	0		080B	F1E5	CCAA8800	5	
12	0	0		080B	E9DA	CCAA8800	5	
13	0	0		080B	E1CF	CCAA8800	5	
14	0	0		080B	D9C4	CCAA8800	5	
15	1	0		080B	D1B9	CCAA8800	5	
16	0	0		17B9	80B0	2FC88000	1	
17	0	0		1182	D1EE	5F910000	0	
18	0	0		1182	C06C	5F910000	0	
19	0	0		1182	AEEA	5F910000	0	
20	0	0		1182	9D68	5F910000	0	
21	0	0		1182	8BE6	5F910000	0	
22	0	0		0CEF	F4C8	BF228800	7	44
23	0	0		0CEF	E7D9	BF228800	7	
24	0	0		0CEF	DAEA	BF228800	7	
25	0	0		0CEF	CDFB	BF228800	7	
26	1	0		0CEF	C10C	BF228800	7	
27	0	0		1518	CEF0	B0588000	3	
28	1	0		1518	B9D8	B0588000	3	
29	0	0		1AA9	A8C0	5CC40000	0	
30	0	0		1AA9	8E17	5CC40000	0	
31	0	0		174E	E6DC	B989EE00	7	F7
32	1	0		174E	CF8E	B989EE00	7	
33	0	0		1AA9	BA70	0A4F7000	4	
34	0	0		1AA9	9FC7	0A4F7000	4	
35	0	0		1AA9	851E	0A4F7000	4	
36	0	0		174E	D4EA	149EE000	3	
37	0	0		174E	BD9C	149EE000	3	

K-23

-

Page 224

.

		JPEG: S	STILL IMAG	GE DATA COMPR	ESSION	STANDARD
0	0	174E	A64E	149EE000	3	
0	0	174E	8F00	149EE000	3	
0	0	1424	EF64	293DC000	2	
0	0	1424	DB40	293DC000	2	
0	0	1424	C71C	293DC000	2	
0	0	1424	B2F8	293DC000	2	
0	0	1424	9ED4	293DC000	2	
Ő	Ő	1424	8AB0	293DC000	2	
0	0	119C	ED18	527B8000	1	
0	0	119C	DB7C	527B8000	1	
0	0	119C	C9E0	527B8000	1	
0	0	119C	B844	527B8000	1	
0	0	119C	A6A8	527B8000	1	
0	0	119C	950C	527B8000	1	
	0	119C	8370			
0				527B8000	1	
0	0	0F6B	E3A8	A4F70000	0	
0	0	0F6B	D43D	A4F70000	0	
0	0	0F6B	C4D2	A4F70000	0	
0	0	0F6B	B567	A4F70000	0	
1	0	0F6B	A5FC	A4F70000	0	
1	0	1424	F6B0	E6696000	4	96
0	0	1AA9	A120	1EEB0000	1	
0	0	1AA9	8677	1EEB0000	1	
0	0	174E	D79C	3DD60000	0	
0	0	174E	C04E	3DD60000	0	
0	0	174E	A900	3DD60000	0	
0	0	174E	91B2	3DD60000	0	
0	0	1424	F4C8	7BAD3A00	7	9D
0	0	1424	E0A4	7BAD3A00	7	
0	0	1424	CC80	7BAD3A00	7	
0	0	1424	B85C	7BAD3A00	7	
0	0	1424	A438	7BAD3A00	7	
0	0	1424	9014	7BAD3A00	7	
1	0	119C	F7E0	F75A7400	6	
1	0	1424	8CE0	88B3A000	3	
0	0	1AA9	A120	7FBD0000	0	
1	0	1AA9	8677	7FBD0000	0	
0	0	2516	D548	9F7A8800	5	51
1	0	2516	B032	9F7A8800	5	
Ō	Ő	299A	9458	517A2000	3	
0	0	2516	D57C	A2F44000	2	
1	0	2516	B066	A2F44000	2	
0	0	299A	9458	5E910000	0	
1	0	2516	D57C	BD22F000	7	78
0	0	299A	9458	32F3C000	5	10
0	0	299A	9438	52F3C000	5	

 $\begin{array}{r} 48\\ 49\\ 50\\ 51\\ 52\\ 53\\ 54\\ 55\\ 57\\ 58\\ 59\\ 60\\ 61\\ 62\\ 63\\ 64\\ 65\\ 66\\ 67\\ 70\\ 71\\ 72\\ 73\\ 74\\ 75\\ 76\\ 77\\ 78\end{array}$

0

K-24

65E78000

D57C

84	0	0		2516	B066	65E78000	4	
85	0	0		2516	8B50	65E78000	4	
86	1	0		1EDF	CC74	CBCF0000	3	
87	1	0		2516	F6F8	F1D00000	0	
88	1	0		299A	9458	7FB95400	6	55
89	0	0		32B4	A668	53ED5000	4	
90	0	0		2E17	E768	A7DAA000	3	
91	1	0		2E17	B951	A7DAA000	3	
92	0	0		32B4	B85C	72828000	1	
93	1	0		32B4	85A8	72828000	1	
94	0	0		3C3D	CAD0	7E3B7E00	7	BF
95	1	0		3C3D	8E93	7E3B7E00	7	
96	0	0		415E	F0F4	AF95F800	5	
97	1	0		415E	AF96	AF95F800	5	
98	0	0	х	4639	82BC	82BBF000	4	
99	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71E000	3	
100	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BBC000	2	
101	1	0		415E	8C72	8C718000	1	
102	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BB0000	0	
103	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71FE00	7	FF 00
104	0	0	X =	4639	82BC	82BBFC00	6	
105	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71F800	5	
106	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	82BBF000	4	
107	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71E000	3	
108	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BBC000	2	
109	1	0		415E	8C72	8C718000	1	
110	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BB0000	0	
111	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71F800	7	FC
112	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BBF000	6	
113	1	0		415E	8C72	8C71E000	5	
114	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BBC000	4	
115	-1	0		415E	8C72	8C718000	3	
116	0	0	X	4639	82BC	82BB0000	2	
117	1	0		415E	8C72	8C700000	1	
118	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	82B80000	0	
119	1	0		415E	8C72	8C6AA200	7	51
120	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	82AD4400	6	
121	1	0		415E	8C72	8C548800	5	
122	0	0	x	4639	82BC	82811000	4	
123	-	0		415E	8C72	8BFC2000	3	
124		Õ	х	4639	82BC	81D04000	2	
125	1	Ő		415E	8C72	8A9A8000	1	
126		Ő	x	4639	82BC	7F0D0000	0	
127		õ		415E	8C72	85150800	7	84
128	Ô	0	х	4639	82BC	74021000	6	
128	1	0	1	415E	8C72	6EFE2000	5	

.

4

-

4

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

130	0	0	х	4639	82BC	47D44000	4	
131	0	0		415E	8C72	16A28000	3	
132	0	0		3C3D	9628	2D450000	2	
133	0	0		375E	B3D6	5A8A0000	1	
134	0	0		32B4	F8F0	B5140000	0	
135	1	0		32B4	C63C	B5140000	0	
136	0	0		3C3D	CAD0	86331C00	6	C7
137	1	0		3C3D	8E93	86331C00	6	
138	1	0		415E	F0F4	CF747000	4	
139	0	0	Х	4639	82BC	3FBCE000	3	
140	0	0		415E	8C72	0673C000	2	
141	0	0		3C3D	9628	0CE78000	1	
142	0	0		375E	B3D6	19CF0000	0	
143	0	0		32B4	F8F0	339F9C00	7	CE
144	0	0		32B4	C63C	339F9C00	7	
145	0	0		32B4	9388	339F9C00	7	
146	0	0		2E17	CIA8	673F3800	6	
147	1	0		2E17	9391	673F3800	6	
148	0	0		32B4	B85C	0714E000	4	
149	0	0		32B4	85A8	0714E000	4	
150	Õ	0		2E17	A5E8	0E29C000	3	
151	Ő	0		299A	EFA2	1C538000	2	
152	0	0		299A	C608	1C538000	2	
153	0	Ő		299A	9C6E	1C538000	2	
154	Ő	0		2516	E5A8	38A70000	1	
155	0	0		2516	C092	38A70000	î	
156	0	0		2516	9B7C	38A70000	1	
157	õ	Ő		1EDF	ECCC	714E0000	0	
158	Ő	0		1EDF	CDED	714E0000	Ő	
159	0	0		1EDF	AFOE	714E0000	0	
160	õ	0		1EDF	902F	714E0000	Ő	
161	1	0		1AA9	E2A0	E29DF200	7	F9
162	1	0		2516	D548	D5379000	4	17
163	1	Ő		299A	9458	94164000	2	
164	1	0		32B4	A668	A5610000	0	
165	1	0		3C3D	CADO	C6B4E400	6	39
166	1	0		415E	F0F4	E0879000	4	55
167	0	0	х	4639	82BC	61E32000	3	
168	0	0	~	4055 415E	8C72	4AC04000	2	
169	1	0		3C3D	9628	95808000	1	
170	1	0		415E	F0F4	EE560000	7	00
171	0	0	х	4639	82BC	7D800000	6	00
172	1	0	~	4039 415E	8C72	81FA0000	5	
172	0	0	х	413E 4639	8C72 82BC	6DCC0000	5	
173	1	0	Λ	4039 415E		62920000	4	
174	1	0	v		8C72			
175	1	0	Х	4639	82BC	2EFC0000	2	

PPEN	NDIX A	ISC	DIS 10	0918-1.	REQUIREN	IENTS AN	D GUIDELINES		
	176	1	0		4B85	F20C	BBF00000	0	
	177	1	0	X	504F	970A	2AD25000	7	28
	178	0	0	Х	5522	8D76	55A4A000	6	
	179	0	0		504F	AA44	3AA14000	5	
	180	1	0		4B85	B3EA	75428000	4	
	181	1	0	X	504F	970A	19BB0000	3	
	182	1	0	Х	5522	8D76	33760000	2	
	183	1	0		59EB	E150	CDD80000	0	
	184	0	1		59EB	B3D6	8CE6FA00	7	7D
	185	1	0		59EB	B3D6	65F7F400	6	1.25
	186	1	1		59EB	B3D6	1819E800	5	
	187	1	1		5522	B3D6	3033D000	4	
	188	1	1		504F	BD68	6067A000	3	
	189	0	1		4B85	DA32	C0CF4000	2	
	190	1	1	x	504F	970A	64448000	1	
	191	1	1		4B85	A09E	3B130000	ò	
	192	0	1		4639	AA32	76268C00	7	46
	193	Õ	1	x	4B85	8C72	245B1800	6	40
	194	1	î	x	504F	81DA	48B63000	5	
	195	1	1	**	4B85	A09E	2E566000	4	
	196	1	1		4639	AA32	5CACC000	3	
	197	0	1		4059 415E	C7F2	B9598000	2	
	198	1	1	х	4639	82BC	658B0000	1	
	199	0	1	~	4059 415E	8C72	52100000	0	
	200	0	1	х	4131	82BC	0DF8E000	7	70
	200	1	1	^	4039 4B85	F20C	37E38000	5	10
	201	1	1		4B85	A687	37E38000	5	
	202	1	1		4639	B604	6FC70000	4	
							DF8E0000	4	
	204	0	1	v	415E	DF96		2	
	205	1	1	Х	4639	82BC	82AC0000	1	
	206	0	1		415E	8C72	8C520000	0	
	207	1	_ 1	Х	4639	82BC	827C0000	-	OT
	208	0	1		415E	8C72	8BF31C00	7	8E
	209	1	1	х	4639	82BC	81BE3800	6	
	210	0	1		415E	8C72	8A767000	5	
	211	1	1	х	4639	82BC	7EC4E000	4	
	212	0	1		415E	8C72	8483C000	3	
	213	1	1	х	4639	82BC	72DF8000	2	
	214	0	1		415E	8C72	6CB90000	1	
	215	1	1	х	4639	82BC	434A0000	0	
	216	1	1		415E	8C72	0D8F9600	7	CB
	217	1	1		3C3D	9628	1B1F2C00	6	
	218	1	1		375E	B3D6	363E5800	5	
	219	1	1		32B4	F8F0	6C7CB000	4	
	220	1	1		32B4	C63C	6C7CB000	4	
	221	0	- 1		32B4	9388	6C7CB000	4	

K-27

1

1

1

i.

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

222	1			3C3D	CAD0	2EA2C000	2	
223	1	1		3C3D	8E93	2EA2C000	2	
224	1	1		375E	A4AC	5D458000	1	
225	0	1		32B4	DA9C	BA8B0000	0	
226	1	1		3C3D	CAD0	4A8F0000	6	C0
227	1	1		3C3D	8E93	4A8F0000	6	
228	0	1		375E	A4AC	951E0000	5	
229	1	1		3C3D	DD78	9F400000	3	
230	0	1		3C3D	A13B	9F400000	3	
231	0	1		415E	F0F4	E9080000	1	
232	1	1	х	4639	82BC	72E40000	0	
233	0	1		415E	8C72	6CC3EC00	7	F6
234	1	1	Х	4639	82BC	435FD800	6	
235	1	1		415E	8C72	0DB9B000	5	
236	1	1		3C3D	9628	1B736000	4	
237	1	1		375E	B3D6	36E6C000	3	
238	1	1		32B4	F8F0	6DCD8000	2	
239	1	1		32B4	C63C	6DCD8000	2	
240	0	1		32B4	9388	6DCD8000	2	
241	1	1		3C3D	CAD0	33E60000	0	
242	1	1		3C3D	8E93	33E60000	0	
Mark	ker det	ected:	zero by	te fed to de	coder			
243	1	1		375E	A4AC	67CC0000	7	
244	0	1		32B4	DA9C	CF980000	6	
245	0	1		3C3D	CAD0	9EC00000	4	
246	1	1		415E	F0F4	40B40000	2	
247	1	1		415E	AF96	40B40000	2	
248	1	1		3C3D	DC70	81680000	1	
249	0	1		3C3D	A033	81680000	1	
		ected	: zero b	yte fed to de				
250	1	1		415E	F0F4	75C80000	7	
251	0	1		415E	AF96	75C80000	7	
252	0	1	Х	4639	82BC	0F200000	6	
253	1	1		4B85	F20C	3C800000	4	
254	1	1		4B85	A687	3C800000	4	
255	0	1		4639	B604	79000000	3	
256	0	1	Х	4B85	8C72	126A0000	2	

K.5 Low-pass downsampling filters for hierarchical coding

In this section simple examples are given of downsampling filters which are compatible with the upsampling filter defined in J.1.1.2.

531

Figure K.5 shows the weighting of neighboring samples for simple one-dimensional horizontal and vertical low-pass filters. The output of the filter must be normalized by the sum of the neighborhood weights.

1	2	1	1
			2
			1

Figure K.5 - Low-pass filter example

The center sample in Figure K.5 should be aligned with the left column or top row of the high resolution image when calculating the left column or top row of the low resolution image. Sample values which are situated outside of the image boundary are replicated from the sample values at the boundary to provide missing edge values.

If the image being downsampled has an odd width or length, the odd dimension is increased by 1 by sample replication on the right edge or bottom row before downsampling.

K.6 Domain of applicability of DCT and spatial coding techniques

The DCT coder is intended for lossy coding in a range from quite visible loss to distortion well below the threshold for visibility. However in general, DCT-based processes cannot be used for true lossless coding.

The lossless coder is intended for completely lossless coding. The lossless coding process is significantly less effective than the DCT-based processes for distortions near and above the threshold of visibility.

The point transform of the input to the lossless coder permits a very restricted form of lossy coding with the "lossless" coder. (The coder is still lossless after the input point transform.) Since the DCT is intended for lossy coding, there may be some confusion about when this alternative lossy technique should be used.

Lossless coding with a point transformed input is intended for applications which cannot be addressed by DCT coding techniques. Among these are:

1. True lossless coding to a specified precision.

2. Lossy coding with precisely defined error bounds.

3. Hierarchical progression to a truly lossless final stage.

If lossless coding with a point transformed input is used in applications which can be met effectively by DCT coding, the results will be significantly less satisfactory. For example, distortion in the form of visible contours usually appears when precision of the luminance component is reduced to about six bits. For normal image data, this occurs at bit rates well above those for which the DCT gives outputs which are visually indistinguishable from the source.

K.7 Domain of applicability of the progressive coding modes of operation

Two very different progressive coding modes of operation have been defined, progressive coding of the DCT coefficients and hierarchical progression. Progressive coding of the DCT coefficients has two complementary procedures, spectral selection and successive approximation. Because of this diversity of choices, there may be some confusion as to which method of progression to use for a given application.

K.7.1 Progressive coding of the DCT

532

In progressive coding of the DCT coefficients two complementary procedures are defined for decomposing the 8x8 DCT coefficient array, spectral selection and successive approximation. Spectral selection partitions zig-zag array of DCT coefficients into "bands", one band being coded in each scan. Successive approximation codes the coefficients with reduced precision in the first scan; in each subsequent scan the precision is increased by one bit.

A single forward DCT is calculated for these procedures. When all coefficients are coded to full precision, the DCT is the same as in the sequential mode. Therefore, like the sequential DCT coding, progressive coding of DCT coefficients is intended for applications which need very good compression for a given level of visual distortion.

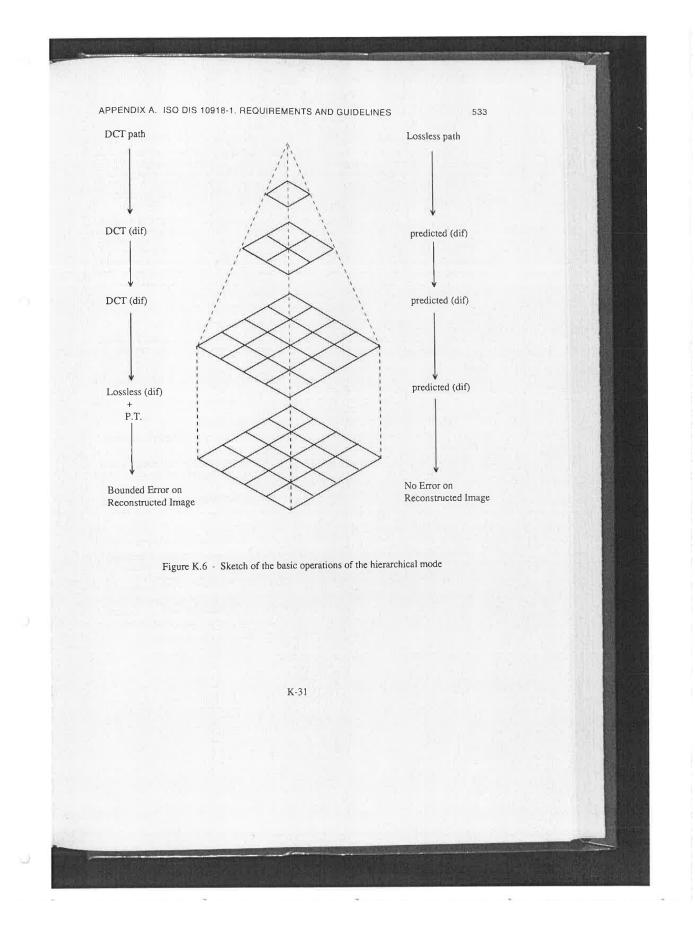
The simplest progressive coding technique is spectral selection; indeed, because of this simplicity, some applications may choose - despite the limited progression that can be achieved - to use only spectral selection. Note, however, that the absence of high frequency bands typically leads - for a given bit rate - to a significantly lower image quality in the intermediate stages than can be achieved with the more general progressions. The net coding efficiency at the completion of the final stage is typically comparable to or slightly less than that achieved with the sequential DCT

A much more flexible progressive system is attained at some increase in complexity when successive approximation is added to the spectral selection progression. For a given bit rate, this system typically provides significantly better image quality than spectral selection alone. The net coding efficiency at the completion of the final stage is typically comparable to or slightly better than that achieved with the sequential DCT.

K.7.2 Hierarchical progression

Hierarchical progression permits a sequence of outputs of increasing spatial resolution, and also allows refinement of image quality at a given spatial resolution. Both DCT and spatial versions of the hierarchical progression are allowed, and progressive coding of DCT coefficients may be used in a frame of the DCT hierarchical progression.

The DCT hierarchical progression is intended for applications which need very good compression for a given level of visual distortion; the spatial hierarchical progression is intended applications which need a simple progression with a truly lossless final stage. Figure K.6 Illistrates examples of these two basic hierarchical progressions.



K.7.2.1 DCT Hierarchical progression

534

If a DCT hierarchical progression uses reduced spatial resolution, the early stages of the progression can have better image quality for a given bit rate than the early stages of nonhierarchical progressive coding of the DCT coefficients. However, at the point where the distortion between source and output becomes indistinguishable, the coding efficiency achieved with a DCT hierarchical progression is typically significantly lower than the coding efficiency achieved with a non-hierarchical progressive coding of the DCT coefficients.

While the hierarchical DCT progression is intended for lossy progressive coding, a final spatial differential coding stage can be used. When this final stage is used, the output can be almost lossless, limited only by the difference between the encoder and decoder IDCT implementations. Since IDCT implementations can differ significantly, truly lossless coding after a DCT hierarchical progression cannot be guaranteed. An important alternative, therefore, is to use the input point transform of the spatial stage to reduce the precision of the differential input. This allows a bounding of the difference between source and output at a significantly lower cost in coded bits than coding of the full precision spatial difference would require.

K.7.2.2 Spatial hierarchical progression

If lossless progression is required, a very simple hierarchical progression may be used in which the spatial lossless coder with point transformed input is used as a first stage. This first stage is followed by one or more spatial differential coding stages. The first stage should be nearly lossless, such that the low order bits which are truncated by the point transform are essentially random - otherwise the compression efficiency will be degraded relative to nonprogressive lossless coding.

K.8 Suppression of block-to-block discontinuities in decoded images

A simple technique is available for suppressing the block-to-block discontinuities which can occur in images compressed by DCT techniques.

The first few (five in this example) low frequency DCT coefficients are predicted from the nine DC values of the block and the eight nearest-neighbor blocks, and the predicted values are used to suppress blocking artifacts in smooth areas of the image.

The prediction equations for the first five AC coefficients in the zig-zag sequence are obtained as follows:

K.8.1 AC prediction

The sample field in a 3 by 3 array of blocks (each block containing an 8x8 array of samples) is modeled by a two-dimensional second degree polynomial of the form:

 $P(x,y) = A1(x^2y^2) + A2(x^2y) + A3(xy^2) + A4(x^2) + A5(xy) + A6(y^2) + A7(x) + A8(y) + A9(y^2) + A9(y^$

The nine coefficients A1 through A9 are uniquely determined by imposing the constraint that the mean of P(x,y) over each of the nine blocks must yield the correct DC-values.

Applying the DCT to the quadratic field predicting the samples in the central block gives a prediction of the low frequency AC coefficients depicted in Figure K.7.

D	Cx	х						
х	x							
х	·		ŀ	•	•			
28	<i>6</i> .		•					
9	×.	3	÷.	32	•	\mathbf{b}	2	
	х.,	8	÷		÷	-	3	
•	3	81						
240	•	3	•	•	×	÷		

535

Figure K.7 - DCT array positions of predicted AC coefficients

The prediction equations derived in this manner are as follows: For the two dimensional array of DC values

DC1	DC2	DC3
DC4	DC5	DC6
DC7	DC8	DC9

the unquantized prediction equations are:

AC01 = 1.13885 (DC4 - DC6) AC10 = 1.13885 (DC2 - DC8) AC20 = 0.27881 (DC2 + DC8 - 2×DC5) AC11 = 0.16213 ((DC1 - DC3) - (DC7 - DC9)) AC02 = 0.27881 (DC4 + DC6 - 2×DC5)

The scaling of the predicted AC coefficients is consistent with the DCT normalization defined in A.3.3.

K.8.2 Quantized AC prediction

The prediction equations can be mapped to a form which uses quantized values of the DC coefficients and which computes quantized AC coefficients using integer arithmetic. The quantized DC coefficients need to be scaled, however, such that the predicted coefficients have fractional bit precision.

First, the prediction equation coefficients are scaled by 32 and rounded to the nearest integer. Thus,

1.13885	×	32	=	36
0.27881	×	32	=	9
0.16213	×	32	=	5

The multiplicative factors are then scaled by the ratio of the DC and AC quantization factors and rounded appropriately. The normalization defined for the DCT introduces another factor of 8 in the unquantized DC values. Therefore, in terms of the quantized DC values, the predicted quantized AC coefficients are given by the equations below. Note that if (for example) the DC values are scaled by a factor of 4, the AC predictions will have 2 fractional bits of precision relative to the quantized DCT coefficients.

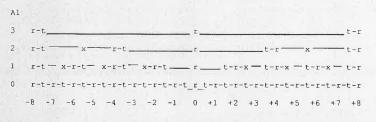
 $\begin{array}{l} QAC01 = (\ (Rd \times Q01) + (36 \times Q00 \times (QDC4 \cdot QDC6)))/(256 \times Q01) \\ QAC10 = (\ (Rd \times Q10) + (36 \times Q00 \times (QDC2 \cdot QDC8)))/(256 \times Q10) \\ QAC20 = (\ (Rd \times Q20) + (9 \times Q00 \times (QDC2 + QDC8 \cdot 2 \times QDC5)))/(256 \times Q20) \\ QAC11 = (\ (Rd \times Q11) + (5 \times Q00 \times ((QDC1 \cdot QDC3) \cdot (QDC7 \cdot QDC9))))/(256 \times Q11) \\ QAC02 = (\ (Rd \times Q02) + (9 \times Q00 \times (QDC4 + QDC6 \cdot 2 \times QDC5)))/(256 \times Q02) \\ \end{array}$

where QDCx and QACxy are the quantized and scaled DC and AC coefficient values. The constant Rd is added to get a correct rounding in the division. Rd is 128 for positive numerators, and -128 for negative numerators.

Predicted values should not override transmitted values. Therefore, predicted values for coefficients which are already nonzero should be set to zero. Predictions should be clamped if they exceed a value which would be quantized to a nonzero value for the current precision in the successive approximation.

K.9 Modification of dequantization to improve displayed image quality

For a progression where the first stage successive approximation bit, Al, is set to 3, uniform quantization of the DCT gives the following quantization and dequantization levels for a sequence of successive approximation scans:



Quantized DCT coefficient value

Figure K.8 - Illustration of two reconstruction strategies

The column to the left labeled 'Al' gives the bit position specified in the scan header. The quantized DCT coefficient magnitudes are therefore divided by 2^{Al} during that scan.

Referring to the final scan (Al=0), the points marked with 't' are the threshold values, while the points marked with 'r' are the reconstruction values. The unquantized output is obtained by multiplying the horizontal scale in Figure K.8 by the quantization value.

K-34

1

536

1

The quantization interval for a coefficient value of zero is indicated by the depressed interval of the line. As the bit position Al is increased, a "fat zero" quantization interval develops around the zero DCT coefficient value. In the limit where the scaling factor is very large, the zero interval is twice as large as the rest of the quantization intervals.

537

Two different reconstruction strategies are shown. The points marked 'r' are the reconstruction obtained using the normal rounding rules for the DCT for the complete full precision output. This rule seems to give better image quality when high bandwidth displays are used. The points marked 'x' are an alternative reconstruction which tends to give better images on lower bandwidth displays. 'x' and 'r' are the same for slice 0. The system designer must determine which strategy is best for the display system being used.

K.10 Example of point transform

The difference between the arithmetic-shift-right by Pt and divide by 2^{Pt} can be seen from the following:

After the level shift the DC has values from +127 to -128. Consider values near zero (after the level shift), and the case where Pt=1:

Before level shift	Before point transform	After divide by 2	After shift-right-arithmetic 1
131	+3	+1	+1
130	+2	+1	+1
129	+1	0	* 0
128	0	0	0
127	-1	0	-1
126	-2	-1	-1
125	-3	-1	-2
124	-4	-2	-2
123	-5	-2	-3

The key difference is in the truncation of precision. The divide truncates the magnitude; the arithmetic shift truncates the LSB. With a divide by 2 we would get non-uniform quantization of the DC values; therefore we use the shift-right-arithmetic operation.

For positive values, the divide by 2 and the shift-right-arithmetic by 1 operations are the same. Therefore, the shift-right-arithmetic by 1 operation effectively is a divide by 2 when the point transform is done before the level shift.



Annex L (informative)

Patents

L.1 Introductory remarks

The user's attention is called to the possibility that - for some of the coding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, and J - compliance with this Specification may require use of an invention covered by patent rights.

539

By publication of this Specification, no position is taken with respect to the validity of this claim or of any patent rights in connection therewith. However, for each patent listed in this Annex, the patent holder has filed with the ITTF a statement of willingness to grant a license under these rights on reasonable and non-discriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license.

The criteria for including patents in this Annex are:

- The patent has been identified by someone who is familiar with the technical fields relevant to this Specification, and who believes use of the invention covered by the patent is required for implementation of one or more of the coding processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, and J.
- The patent-holder has written a letter to the ITTF, stating willingness to grant a license to an unlimited number of applicants throughout the world under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination.

This list of patents shall be updated during preparation and maintenance of this Specification. During preparation, the list shall be updated upon publication of the DIS and any subsequent revisions, and upon publication of the IS. During maintenance, the list shall be updated, if necessary, upon publication of any revisions to the IS.

L.2 List of patents

The following patents may be required for implementation of any one of the processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, and J which uses arithmetic coding:

US 4,633,490, December 30, 1986, J.L. Mitchell and G. Goertzel, "Symmetrical Adaptive Data Compression/Decompression System".

US 4,652,856, February 4, 1986, K.M. Mohiuddin and J.J. Rissanen, "A Multiplication-free Multi-Alphabet Arithmetic Code".

US 4,369,463, January 18, 1983, D. Anastassiou and J.L. Mitchell, "Grey Scale Image Compression with Code Words a Function of Image History".

US 4,725,884, February 16, 1988, C.A. Gonzales, J.L. Mitchell, and W.B. Pennebaker, "Adaptive Graylevel Image Compression System".

L-1

1

JPEG: STILL IMAGE DATA COMPRESSION STANDARD

US 4,749,983, June 7, 1988 G. Langdon, "Compression of Multilevel Signals".

US 4,935,882, June 19, 1990, W.B. Pennebaker and J.L. Mitchell, "Probability Adaption for Arithmetic Coders".

US 4,905,297, February 27, 1990, G.G. Langdon, Jr., J.L. Mitchell, W.B. Pennebaker, and F.F. Rissanen, "Arithmetic Coding Encoder and Decoder System".

US 4,973,961, November 27, 1990, C. Chamzas, D.L. Duttweiler, "Method and Apparatus for Carry-over Control in Arithmetic Entropy Coding".

US 5,025,258, June 18, 1991, D.L. Duttweiler, "Adaptive Probability Estimator for Entropy Encoding/Decoding".

Japanese Patent Application 2-46275, February 26, 1990, F. Ono, T. Kimura, M. Yoshida, and S. Kino, "Coding System".

No other patents required for implementation of any of the other processes specified in Annexes F, G, H, or J had been identified at the time of publication of this Specification.

L-2

Annex M (informative)

Bibliography

M.1 General references

1. A. Leger, T. Omachi, and G.K. Wallace, "JPEG Still Picture Compression Algorithm," Optical Engineering, Vol. 30, No. 7, pp. 947-954 (July 1991).

541

2. M. Rabbani and P. Jones, "Digital Image Compression Techniques", Tutorial Texts in Optical Engineering, vol. TT7, SPIE Press, 1991.

3. G. Hudson, H. Yasuda, and I. Sebestyen, "The International Standardization of a Still Picture Compression Technique," Proc. of IEEE Global Telecommunications Conference, pp. 1016-1021 (Nov. 1988).

4. A. Leger, J. Mitchell, and Y. Yamazaki, "Still Picture Compression Algorithm Evaluated for International Standardization," Proc. of the IEEE Global Telecommunications Conference, pp. 1028-1032 (Nov. 1988).

5. G. Wallace, R. Vivian, and H. Poulsen, "Subjective Testing Results for Still Picture Compression Algorithms for International Standardization," Proc. of the IEEE Global Telecommunications Conference, pp. 1022-1027 (Nov. 1988).

6. J.L. Mitchell and W.B. Pennebaker, "Evolving JPEG Color Data Compression Standard," *Standards for Electronic Imaging systems*, M. Nier, M.E. Courtot, Editors, SPIE Vol. CR37, pp. 68-97 (1991).

7. G.K. Wallace, "The JPEG Still Picture Compression Standard," Communications of the ACM, Vol. 34, No. 4, pp. 31-44 (April 1991).

8. A.N. Netravali and B.G. Haskell, *Digital Pictures: Representation and Compression*, Plenum Press, New York, 1988.

M.2 DCT references

1. W. Chen, C.H. Smith, and S.C. Fralick, "A Fast Computational Algorithm for the Discrete Cosine Transform", IEEE Trans. on Comm., COM-25, pp. 1004-1009, Sept. 1977.

2. N. Ahmed, T. Natarajan, and K. R. Rao, "Discrete Cosine Transform," IEEE Trans. on Computers, vol. C-23, pp. 90-93 (Jan. 1974).

3. N. J. Narasinha and A. M. Peterson, "On the Computation of the Discrete Cosine Transform," IEEE Trans. Communications, Vol. COM-26, No. 6, pp. 966-968 (Oct. 1978).

M-1

4. P. Duhamel and C. Guillemot, "Polynomial Transform Computation of the 2-D DCT," Proc. IEEE ICASSP-90, pp. 1515-1518, Albuquerque, New Mexico, 1990.

5. E. Feig, "A Fast Scaled DCT Algorithm," in *Image Processing Algorithms and Techniques*, Proc. SPIE, Vol. 1244, K.S. Pennington and R. J. Moorhead II, Editors, pp. 2-13, Santa Clara, California, February 11-16, 1990.

6 .H. S. Hou, "A Fast Recursive Algorithm for Computing the Discrete Cosine Transform," IEEE Trans. Acoust. Speech and Signal Processing, Vol. ASSP-35, No. 10, pp. 1455-1461.

7. B.G. Lee, "A New Algorithm to Compute the Discrete Cosine Transform," IEEE Trans. on Acoust., Speech and Signal Processing, Vol. ASSP-32, No. 6, pp. 1243-1245 (Dec. 1984).

8. E. N. Linzer and E. Feig, "New DCT and Scaled DCT Algorithms for Fused Multiply/Add Architectures," Proc. IEEE ICASSP-91, pp. 2201-2204, Toronto, Canada, May 1991.

9. M. Vetterli and H.J. Nussbaumer, "Simple FFT and DCT Algorithms with Reduced Number of Operations," Signal Processing, Aug. 1984.

10. M. Vetterli, "Fast 2-D Discrete Cosine Transform," Proc. IEEE ICASSP-85, pp. 1538-1541, Tampa, Florida, March 1985.

11. Y. Arai, T. Agui, and M. Nakajima, "A Fast DCT-SQ Scheme for Images," Trans. of IEICE, Vol. E 71, No. 11, pp. 1095-1097 (Nov. 1988).

12. N. Suehiro and M. Hatori, "Fast Algorithms for the DFT and other Sinusoidal Transforms," IEEE Trans. on Acoust., Speech and Signal Processing, Vol ASSP-34, No. 3, pp. 642-644 (June 1986).

M.3 Quantization and human visual model references

542

1. W.H. Chen and W.K. Pratt, "Scene adaptive coder", IEEE Transactions on Communications, vol. COM-32, pp. 225-232, March 1984.

2. D.J. Granrath, "The role of human visual models in image processing", Proceedings of the IEEE, vol. 67 pp. 552-561, May 1981.

3. H. Lohscheller, "Vision adapted progressive image transmission", Proceedings of EUSIPCO-83, pp. 191-194, September 1983.

4. H. Lohscheller and U. Franke, "Color picture coding - Algorithm optimization and technical realization", Frequenze, vol. 41, pp. 291-299, 1987.

5. H. Lohscheller, "A subjectively adapted image communication system", IEEE Transactions on Communications, vol. COM-32, pp. 1316-1322, December 1984.

6. H.A. Peterson, et al., "Quantization of color image components in the DCT domain", SPIE/IS&T 1991 Symposium on Electronic Imaging Science and Technology, Feb. 1991.

M-2

M.4 Arithmetic coding references

1. G. Langdon, "An Introduction to Arithmetic Coding", IBM J. Res. Develop. 28, pp. 135149, March 1984.

543

2. W.B. Pennebaker, J.L. Mitchell, G. Langdon, Jr., and R.B. Arps, "An Overview of the Basic Principles of the Q-Coder Binary Arithmetic Coder," IBM J. Res. Develop. 32, No. 6, pp. 717-726, November 1988.

3. J.L. Mitchell and W.B. Pennebaker, "Optimal Hardware and Software Arithmetic Coding Procedures for the Q-Coder Binary Arithmetic Coder", IBM J. Res. Develop.32, No. 6, pp. 727-736, November 1988.

4. W.B. Pennebaker and J.L. Mitchell, "Probability Estimation for the Q-Coder", IBM J. Res. Develop.32, No. 6, pp. 737-752, November 1988.

5. J.L. Mitchell and W.B. Pennebaker, "Software Implementations of the Q-Coder," IBM J. Res. Develop.32, No. 6, pp. 753-774, November 1988.

6. R. Arps, T.K. Truong, D.J. Lu, R.C. Pasco, and T.D. Reiedman, "A Multi-Purpose VLSI Chip for Adaptive Data Compression of Bilevel Images", IBM J. Res. Develop.32, No. 6, pp. 775-795, November 1988.

7. F. Ono, M. Yoshida, T. Kimura, and S. Kino, "Subtraction-type Arithmetic Coding with MPS/LPS Conditional Exchange", Annual Spring Converence of IECED, Japan, D-288, 1990.

8. C. Chamzas and D. Duttweiler, "Probability Estimation in Arithmetic Coders," in preparation.

M.5 Huffman coding references

1. D.A. Huffman, "A Method for the Construction of Minimum Redundancy codes", Proc. IRE 40, pp. 1098-1101, September 1952.

M-3